Table of Contents

4 Mechanical Systems

4.1 Overview

The objective of the Building Energy Efficiency Standards (Energy Standards) for mechanical systems is to reduce energy consumption while maintaining occupant comfort by:

1. Maximizing equipment efficiency at design conditions and during part load operation
2. Minimizing distribution losses of heating and cooling energy
3. Optimizing system control to minimize unnecessary operation and simultaneous use of heating and cooling energy

An important function of the Energy Standards is indoor air quality for occupant comfort and health. The 2019 Standards incorporate requirements for outdoor air ventilation that must be met during normally occupied hours.

This chapter summarizes the requirements for space conditioning, ventilation, and service water heating systems for non-process loads in nonresidential buildings. Chapter 10 covers process loads in nonresidential buildings and spaces.

This chapter is organized as follows:

Section 4.1 overview of the chapter and the scope of the mechanical systems requirement in the Energy Standards

Section 4.2 requirements for heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC) and service water heating equipment efficiency and equipment mounted controls

Section 4.3 mechanical ventilation, natural ventilation, and demand-controlled ventilation

Section 4.4 construction and insulation of ducts and pipes and duct sealing to reduce leakage

Section 4.5 control requirements for HVAC systems including zone controls and controls to limit reheating and recooling

Section 4.6 remaining requirements for HVAC systems, including sizing and equipment selection, load calculations, economizers, electric resistance heating limitation, limitation on air-cooled chillers, fan power consumption, and fan and pump flow controls

Section 4.7 remaining requirements for service water heating

Section 4.8 performance method of compliance

Section 4.9 compliance requirements for additions and alterations.

Section 4.10 glossary, reference, and definitions.

Section 4.11 mechanical plan check documents, including information that must be provided in the building plans and specifications to show compliance with the Energy Standards

Acceptance requirements apply to all covered systems regardless of whether the prescriptive or performance compliance approach is used.

Chapter 12 lays out the mandated acceptance test requirements, which are summarized at the end of each section.

The full acceptance requirements are in §120.5 of the Energy Standards and in the 2019 Reference Appendix NA7.

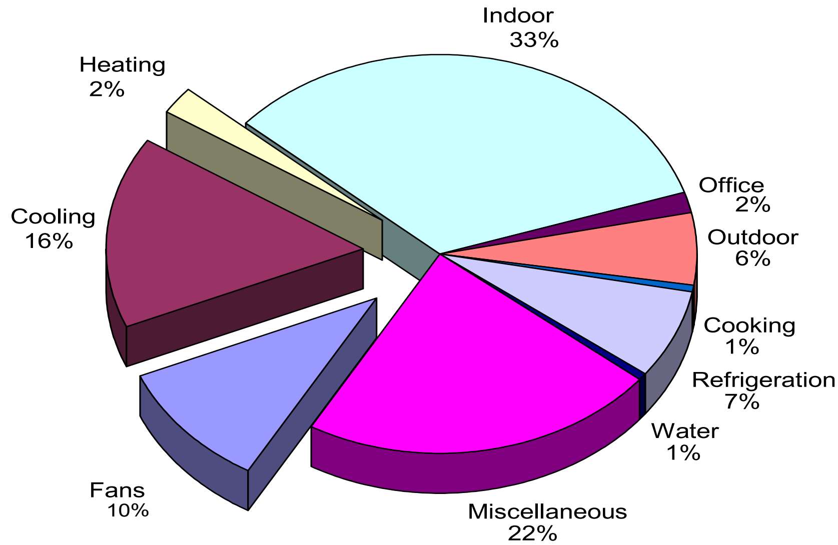
4.1.1 What's New for 2019

- Demand response HVAC controls
  - Open ADR 2.0
  - Occupancy sensors
- Air filtration requirements
  - Efficiency
  - Pressure Drop
  - Labeling
- Ventilation and indoor air quality
  - Kitchen range hoods
  - Natural ventilation criteria
  - Minimum ventilation rates
  - Exhaust ventilation
  - Zone air distribution effectiveness
  - Air classification and recirculation limits
- Demand control ventilation updates
- Healthcare facilities
- Fan power limitation changes
  - Pressure drop adjustment
- Variable air volume zone controls
- Passive waterside economizer requirements
  - Integrated waterside economizer
- Cooling tower efficiency
- Exhaust system transfer air
- Expanded economizer fault detection diagnostics
- Adiabatic condenser requirements

4.1.2 HVAC Energy Use

Mechanical and lighting systems are the largest consumers of energy in nonresidential buildings. The amount of energy consumed by various mechanical components varies according to system design and climate. Fans and cooling equipment are the largest components of energy consumed for HVAC purposes in most building in lower elevation climates. Energy consumed for heating is usually less than fans and cooling, followed by service water heating.

Figure 4-1: Typical Nonresidential Building Electricity Use



Heating, cooling and ventilation account for about 28 percent of commercial building electricity use in California.

Source IEQ RFP, December 2002, California Energy Commission No. 500-02-501.

4.1.2.1 Mandatory Measures

Mandatory measures, covered in §110.0-110.12 and §120.0-120.9, apply to all nonresidential buildings, whether the designer chooses the prescriptive or performance approach for compliance. The following sections are applicable to mechanical systems:

1. Equipment certification and equipment efficiency - §110.1 and §110.2
2. Service water heating systems and equipment - §110.3
3. Pool and spa heating systems and equipment - §110.4
4. Restrictions on pilot lights for natural gas appliances and equipment - §110.5
5. Demand responsive controls - §110.12
6. Ventilation and indoor air quality requirements - §120.1
7. Control requirements - §120.2
8. Pipe insulation - §120.3
9. Duct construction and insulation - §120.4
10. Acceptance tests in §120.5 and the 2019 Reference Appendices NA7
11. Commissioning - §120.8
12. Commercial Boilers - §120.9

4.1.3 Prescriptive and Performance Compliance Approaches

The Energy Standards allow mechanical system compliance to be demonstrated by meeting the mandatory requirements and the requirements of either the prescriptive or performance compliance approaches.

4.1.3.1 Prescriptive Compliance Approach

The measures in the prescriptive compliance approach, §140.4, cover specific requirements for individual components and systems that directly comply with the Energy Standards, including:

1. §140.4(a) and (b) -Load calculations, sizing, system type and equipment selection
2. §140.4(c) - Fan power consumption
3. §140.4(d) - Controls to reduce reheating, recooling and mixing of conditioned air streams
4. §140.4(e) - Economizers
5. §140.4(f) - Supply temperature reset
6. §140.4(g) - Restrictions on electric-resistance heating
7. §140.4(h) - Fan speed controls for heat rejection equipment
8. §140.4(h) - Limitation on centrifugal fan cooling towers
9. §140.4(i) - Minimum chiller efficiency
10. §140.4(j) - Limitation on air-cooled chillers
11. §140.4(k) - Hydronic system design
12. §140.4(l) - Duct sealing
13. §140.4(m) - Supply fan control
14. §140.4(n) - Mechanical system shut-off control
15. §140.4(o) - Exhaust system transfer air

4.1.3.2 Performance Compliance Approach

The performance compliance approach, §140.1, allows the designer to trade off energy use between different building systems. This approach provides greater design flexibility but requires extra effort and a computer simulation of the building. The design must still meet all mandatory requirements.

1. Performance approach trade-offs can be applied to the following disciplines: mechanical, lighting, envelope, and covered processes. The performance approach requires creating a proposed energy model using approved Energy Commission compliance software. The software will automatically create a standard design model based on the features of the proposed model and compare the energy use of the two: Standard design energy model that meets mandatory and prescriptive requirements (per the Alternative Calculation Method Reference Manual).

2. Proposed design energy model that reflects the feature of the proposed building.

The proposed model complies if it results in lower time dependent valuation (TDV) energy use than the standard design model.

The performance approach may only be used to model the performance of mechanical systems that are covered under the building permit application (see Section 4.8 and Chapter 11 for more detail).

4.2 Equipment Requirements

All of the equipment efficiency requirements are mandatory measures.

The mandatory requirements for mechanical equipment must be included in the system design, whether the overall building compliance is the prescriptive or performance approach. These features are cost effective over a wide range of building types and mechanical systems.

Most mandatory features for equipment efficiency are requirements for the manufacturer. It is the responsibility of the designer to specify products in the building design that meet these requirements. Manufacturers of central air conditioners and heat pumps, room air conditioners, package terminal air conditioners, package terminal heat pumps, spot air conditioners, computer room air conditioners, central fan-type furnaces, gas space heaters, boilers, pool heaters and water heaters are regulated through the Title 20 Appliance Efficiency Regulations. Manufacturers must certify to the Energy Commission that their equipment meets or exceeds minimum standards. The Commission maintains a database which lists the certified equipment found at: www.energy.ca.gov/appliances/database

Additionally, manufacturers of low leakage air-handling units must certify to the Energy Commission that the air-handler unit meets the specifications in Reference Appendices JA9.

4.2.1 Mandatory Requirements

Mechanical equipment must be certified by the manufacturer as complying with the mandatory requirements in the following sections:

1. §110.0 - Mandatory Requirements for Systems and Equipment Certification
2. §110.1 - Mandatory Requirements for Appliances.
3. §110.2 - Mandatory Requirements for Space-Conditioning Equipment
    a. Efficiency
    b. Gas- and Oil-Fired Furnace Standby Loss Controls
    c. Low Leakage Air-Handling Units
4. §110.3 - Mandatory Requirements for Service Water Heating Systems and Equipment
    a. Certification by Manufactures

   b. Efficiency

5. §110.4 - Mandatory Requirements for Pool and Spa Systems and Equipment
   a. Certification by Manufactures
6. §110.5 - Natural Gas Central Furnaces, Cooking Equipment, and Pool and Spa Heaters: Pilot Lights Prohibited

Mechanical equipment must be specified and installed in accordance with sections:

1. §110.2 - Mandatory Requirements for Space Conditioning Equipment
   a. Controls for Heat Pumps with Supplementary Electric Resistance Heaters
   b. Thermostats
   c. Open and Closed-Circuit Cooling Towers (blowdown control)
2. §110.3 - Mandatory Requirements for Service Water Heating Systems and Equipment
3. §110.12 – Mandatory Requirements for Demand Management
4. §120.1 - Requirements for Ventilation and Indoor Air Quality
5. §120.2 - Required Controls for Space Conditioning Systems (see Section 4.5)
   a. Occupant Controlled Smart Thermostats (OCST)
   b. Direct Digital Controls (DDC)
   c. Optimum Start/Stop Controls
   d. Economizer Fault Detection and Diagnostics
6. §120.3 - Requirements for Pipe Insulation
7. §120.4 - Requirements for Air Distribution Ducts and Plenums
8. §120.5 - Required Nonresidential Mechanical System Acceptance

4.2.2 Equipment Efficiency

§110.2(a)

All space conditioning equipment installed in a nonresidential building, subject to these regulations, must be certified as meeting certain minimum efficiency and control requirements. These requirements are contained in §110.2 and vary based on the type and capacity of the equipment. Tables 110.2-A through 110.2-K list the minimum equipment efficiency requirements for the 2019 Energy Standards.

Table 4-1: Unitary Air Conditioners and Condensing Units Minimum Efficiency Requirements

Equipment Type	Size Category	Efficiency [a,b]	Test Procedure[c]
Air conditioners, air cooled both split and single packaged	≥65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	11.2 EER 12.9 IEER	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
	≥135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	11.0 EER 12.4 IEER	
	≥240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	10.0 EER 11.6 IEER	
	≥760,000 Btu/h	9.7 EER 11.2 IEER	
Air conditioners, water cooled	≥65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	12.1 EER 13.9 IEER	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
	≥135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	12.5 EER 13.9 IEER	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
	≥240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	12.4 EER 13.6 IEER	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
	≥760,000 Btu/h	12.2 EER 13.5 IEER	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
Air conditioners, evaporatively cooled	≥65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	12.1 EER[b] 12.3 IEER[b]	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
	≥135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	12.0 EER[b] 12.2 IEER[b]	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
	≥240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	11.9 EER[b] 12.1 IEER[b]	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
	≥760,000 Btu/h	11.7 EER[b] 11.9 IEER[b]	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
Condensing units, air cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	10.5 EER 11.8 IEER	ASNI/AHRI 365
Condensing units, water cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	ASNI/AHRI 365
Condensing units, evaporatively cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	

[a] IEERs are only applicable to equipment with capacity control as specified by ANSI/AHRI 340/360 test procedures
[b] Deduct 0.2 from the required EERs and IEERs for units with a heating section other than electric resistance heat
[c] Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions

For equipment <65,000 Btu/hr see Nonresidential Appendix B

Source: California Energy Commission, 2019 Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Table 110.2-A

Table 4-2: Heat Pumps Minimum Efficiency Requirements

Equipment Type	Size Category	Efficiency[a,b]		Test Procedure[c]
Air cooled (cooling mode), both split system and single package	≥65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	11.0 EER 12.2 IEER		ANSI/AHRI 340/360
	≥135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	10.6 EER 11.6 IEER		
	≥240,000 Btu/h	9.5 EER 10.6 IEER		
Water source (cooling mode)	≥65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	86^0F entering water	13.0 EER	ISO-13256-1
Groundwater source (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	59^0F entering water	18.0 EER	ISO-13256-1
Ground source (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	77^0F entering water	14.1 EER	ISO-13256-1
Water source water-to-water (cooling)	< 135,000 Btu/h	86^0F entering water	10.6 EER	ISO-13256-2
Groundwater source water-to-water	< 135,000 Btu/h	59^0F entering water	16.3 EER	ISO-13256-1
Ground source brint-to-water (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	77^0F entering water	12.1 EER	ISO-13256-2
Air cooled (heating mode), split system and single package	≥65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	47^0F db/43^0F wb outdoor air	3.3 COP	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
		17^0F db/15^0F wb outdoor air	2.25 COP	
	≥135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	47^0F db/43^0F wb outdoor air	3.2 COP	
		17^0F db/15^0F wb outdoor air	2.05 COP	

(Cont.) Table 4-2: Heat Pumps Minimum Efficiency Requirements

Equipment Type	Size Category	Subcategory or Rating Condition	Efficiency[a]	Test Procedure[c]
Water source (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	68^0F entering water	4.3 COP	ISO-13256-1
	≥135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	68^0F entering water	2.9 COP	ISO-13256-1
Groundwater source (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	50^0F entering water	3.7 COP	ISO-13256-1
Ground source (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	32^0F entering water	3.2 COP	ISO-13256-1
Water source water-to-water (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	68^0F entering water	3.7 COP	ISO-13256-2
Groundwater source water-to-water (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	50^0F entering water	3.1 COP	ISO-13256-2
Ground source brine-to-water (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	32^0F entering water	2.5 COP	ISO-13256-2

[a] IEERs are applicable to equipment with capacity control as specified by ANSI/AHRI 340/360 test procedures.
[b] Deduct 0.2 from the required EERs and IEERs for units with a heating section other than electric resistance heat
[c] Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions

Source: California Energy Commission, 2019 Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Table 110.2-B

Table 4-3: Air Cooled Gas Engine Heat Pumps

Equipment Type	Size Category	Subcategory or Rating Condition	Efficiency	Test Procedure[a]
Air-cooled gas-engine heat pump (cooling mode)	All Capacities	95° F db Outdoor air	0.60 COP	ANSI Z21.40.4A
Air-cooled gas-engine heat pump (heating mode)	All Capacities	47° F db/43° F wb Outdoor air	0.72 COP	ANSI Z21.40.4A

[a] Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions

Source: California Energy Commission, 2019 Building Energy Efficiency Standards Table 110.2-C

Table 4-4 Water Chilling Packages Minimum Efficiency

Equipment Type	Size Category	Path A Efficiency [a,b]	Path B Efficiency [a,b]	Test Procedure
Air cooled, with condenser electrically operated	< 150 tons	≥ 10.1 EER ≥ 13.7 IPLV	≥ 9.7 EER ≥ 15.8 IPLV	AHRI 550/590
	≥ 150 tons	≥ 10.1 EER ≥ 14.0 IPLV	≥ 9.7 EER ≥ 16.1 IPLV	
Air cooled, without condenser electrically operated	All capacities	Air-cooled chillers without condensers must be rated with matching condensers and comply with the air-cooled chiller efficiency requirements.		
Water cooled, electrically operated, (reciprocating)	All capacities	Reciprocating units must comply with the water-cooled positive displacement efficiency requirements.		AHRI 550/590
Water cooled, electrically operated positive displacement	< 75 tons	≤ 0.750 kW/ton ≤ 0.600 IPLV	≤ 0.780 kW/ton ≤ 0.500 IPLV	AHRI 550/590
	≥ 75 tons and < 150 tons	≤ 0.720-kW/ton ≤ 0.560 IPLV	≤ 0.750 kW/ton ≤ 0.490 IPLV	
	≥ 150 tons and < 300 tons	≤ 0.660 kW/ton ≤ 0.540 IPLV	≤ 0.680 kW/ton ≤ 0.440 IPLV	
	≥ 300 tons and < 600 tons	≤ 0.610 kW/ton ≤ 0.520 IPLV	≤ 0.625 kW/ton ≤ 0.410 IPLV	
	> 600 tons	≤ 0.560 kW/ton ≤ 0.500 IPLV	≤ 0.585 kW/ton ≤ 0.380 IPLV	
Water cooled, electrically operated, centrifugal	< 150 tons	≤ 0.610 kW/ton ≤ 0.550 IPLV	≤ 0.695 kW/ton ≤ 0.440 IPLV	
	≥ 150 tons and < 300 tons	≤ 0.610 kW/ton ≤ 0.550 IPLV	≤ 0.635 kW/ton ≤ 0.400 IPLV	
	≥ 300 tons and < 400 tons	≤ 0.560 kW/ton ≤ 0.520 IPLV	≤ 0.595 kW/ton ≤ 0.390 IPLV	
	≥ 400 tons and < 600 tons	≤ 0.560 kW/ton ≤ 0.500 IPLV	≤ 0.585 kW/ton ≤ 0.380 IPLV	
	≥ 600 tons	≤ 0.560 kW/ton ≤ 0.500 IPLV	≤ 0.585 kW/ton ≤ 0.380 IPLV	

(Cont.) Table 4-4: Water Chilling Packages Minimum Efficiency

Equipment Type	Size Category	Path A Efficiency [a,b]	Path B Efficiency [a,b]	Test Procedure[c]
Air cooled absorption, single effect	All capacities	≥ 0.600 COP	NA[d]	ANSI/AHRI 560
Water cooled absorption, single effect	All capacities	≥ 0.700 COP	NA[d]	
Absorption double effect, indirect fired	All capacities	≥ 1.000 COP ≥ 1.050 IPLV	NA[d]	
Absorption double effect, direct fired	All capacities	≥ 1.000 COP ≥ 1.000 IPLV	NA[d]	
Water cooled gas engine driven chiller	All capacities	≥ 1.2 COP ≥ 2.0 IPLV	NA[d]	ANSI Z21.40.4A

[a] No requirement for:

- Centrifugal chillers with design leaving evaporator temperature less than 36 degrees F; or
- Positive displacement chillers with design leaving fluid temperatures less than or equal to 32 degrees F
- Absorption chillers with design leaving fluid temperature less than 40 degrees F

[b] Must meet the minimum requirements of Path A or Path B. However, both the full load (COP) and IPLV must be met to fulfill the requirements of the applicable Path.

[c] See §100.1 for definitions

[d] NA means not applicable

Source; California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Table 110.2-D

Table 4-5: Packaged Terminal Air Conditioners (PTAC) and Heat Pumps Minimum Efficiency Requirements

Equipment Type	Size Category (Input)	Subcategory or Rating Condition	Efficiency	Test Procedure[c]
PTAC (cooling mode) newly constructed or newly conditioned or additions	All capacities	95^{0}F db Outdoor air	14.0-(0.300 x Cap/1000) [a] EER	ANSI/AHRI/CSA 310/380
PTAC (cooling mode) replacements[b]	All capacities	95^{0}F db Outdoor air	10.9-(0.213 x Cap/1000) [a] EER	ANSI/AHRI/CSA 310/380
PTHP (cooling mode) newly constructed or newly conditioned or additions	All capacities	95^{0}F db Outdoor air	14.0-(0.300 x Cap/1000) [a] EER	ANSI/AHRI/CSA 310/380
PTHP (Cooling mode) replacements[b]	All capacities	95^{0}F db Outdoor air	10.8-(0.213 x Cap/1000) [a] EER	ANSI/AHRI/CSA 310/380
PTHP (Heating mode) newly constructed or newly conditioned or additions	All capacities	-	3.7-(0.052 x Cap/1000) [a] COP	ANSI/AHRI/CSA 310/380
PTHP (Heating mode) replacements[b]	All capacities	-	2.9-(0.026 x Cap/1000) [a] COP	ANSI/AHRI/CSA 310/380
SPVAC (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	95^{0}F db/75^{0}F wb Outdoor air	11.0 EER	ANSI/AHRI 390
SPVAC (cooling mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	95^{0}F db/75^{0}F wb Outdoor air	10.0 EER	ANSI/AHRI 390
SPVAC (cooling mode)	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	95^{0}F db/75^{0}F wb Outdoor air	10.0 EER	ANSI/AHRI 390
SPVAC (cooling mode) nonweatherized space constrained	≤ 30,000 Btu/h	95^{0}F db/75^{0}F wb Outdoor air	9.20 EER	ANSI/AHRI 390
SPVAC (cooling mode) nonweatherized space constrained	> 30,000 Btu/h and ≤36,000 Btu/h	95^{0}F db/75^{0}F wb Outdoor air	9.00 EER	ANSI/AHRI 390
SPVHP (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	95^{0}F db/75^{0}F wb Outdoor air	11.0 EER	ANSI/AHRI 390
SPVHP (cooling mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	95^{0}F db/75^{0}F wb Outdoor air	10.0EER	ANSI/AHRI 390
SPVHP (cooling mode)	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	95^{0}F db/75^{0}F wb Outdoor air	10.0 EER	ANSI/AHRI 390
SPVHP (cooling mode) nonweatherized space constrained	≤ 30,000 Btu/h	95^{0}F db/75^{0}F wb Outdoor air	9.20 EER	ANSI/AHRI 390
SPVHP (cooling mode) nonweatherized space constrained	> 30,000 Btu/h and ≤36,000 Btu/h	95^{0}F db/75^{0}F wb Outdoor air	9.00 EER	ANSI/AHRI 390

SPVHP (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	47^{0}F db/43^{0}F wb Outdoor air	3.3 COP	ANSI/AHRI 390
SPVHP (heating mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	47^{0}F db/43^{0}F wb Outdoor air	3.0 COP	ANSI/AHRI 390
SPVHP (heating mode)	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	47^{0}F db/43^{0}F wb Outdoor air	3.0 COP	ANSI/AHRI 390
SPVHP (heating mode) nonweatherized space constrained	≤ 30,000 Btu/h	47^{0}F db/43^{0}F wb Outdoor air	3.00 COP	ANSI/AHRI 390
SPVHP (heating mode) nonweatherized space constrained	> 30,000 Btu/h and ≤36,000 Btu/h	47^{0}F db/43^{0}F wb Outdoor air	3.00 COP	ANSI/AHRI 390

[a] Cap means the rated cooling capacity of the product in Btu/h. If the unit's capacity is less than 7000 Btu/h, use 7000 Btu/h in the calculation. If the unit's capacity is greater than 15,000 Btu/h, use 15,000 Btu/h in the calculation.
[b] Replacement units must be factory labeled as follows: "MANUFACTURED FOR REPLACEMENT APPLICATIONS ONLY; NOT TO BE INSTALLED IN NEWLY CONSTRUCTED BUILDINGS." Replacement efficiencies apply only to units with existing sleeves less than 16 inches high or less than 42-inch-wide and having a cross-sectional area less than 670 sq inches.
[c] *Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions*

Source: California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards Table 110.2-E

Table 4-6: Heat Transfer Equipment

Equipment Type	Subcategory	Minimum Efficiency [a]	Test Procedure [b]
Liquid-to-liquid heat exchangers	Plate type	NR	ANSI/AHRI 400

[a] NR: No requirement
[b] Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions

Source: California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards Table 110.2-F

Table 4-7: Performance Requirements for Heat Rejection Equipment

Equipment Type	Total System Heat Rejection Capacity at Rated Conditions	Subcategory or Rating Condition	Performance Required, [a, b, c, d]	Test Procedure[e]
Propeller or axial fan open-circuit cooling towers	All	95^{0}F entering water 85^{0}F leaving water 75^{0}F entering air wb	≥ 42.1 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105 and CTI STD-201 RS
Centrifugal fan open-circuit cooling towers	All	95^{0}F entering water 85^{0}F leaving water 75^{0}F entering air wb	≥ 20.0 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105 and CTI STD-201 RS
Propeller or axial fan closed-circuit cooling towers	All	102^{0}F entering water 90^{0}F leaving water 75^{0}F entering air wb	≥ 16.1 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105 and CTI STD-201 RS
Centrifugal fan closed-circuit cooling towers	All	102^{0}F entering water 90^{0}F leaving water 75^{0}F entering air wb	≥ 7.0 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105 and CTI STD-201 RS

(Cont.) Table 4-7: Performance Requirements for Heat Rejection Equipment

Propeller or axial fan evaporative condensers	All	R-507A test fluid 165^{0}F entering gas temp 105^{0}F condensing temp 75^{0}F entering air wb	≥ 157,000 Btu/h x hp	CTI ATC-106
Propeller or axial fan evaporative condensers	All	Ammonia test fluid 140^{0}F entering gas temp 96.3^{0}F condensing temp 75^{0}F entering air wb	≥ 134,000 Btu/h x hp	CTI ATC-106
Centrifugal fan evaporative condensers	All	R-507A test fluid 165^{0}F entering gas temp 105^{0}F condensing temp 75^{0}F entering air wb	≥ 135,000 Btu/h x hp	CTI ATC-106
Centrifugal fan evaporative condensers	All	Ammonia test fluid 140^{0}F entering gas temp 96.3^{0}F condensing temp 75^{0}F entering air wb	≥ 110,000 Btu/h x hp	CTI ATC-106
Air cooled condensers	All	125^{0}F condensing temperature R22 test fluid 190^{0}F entering gas temperature 15^{0}F subcooling 95^{0}F entering db	≥ 176,000 Btu/h x hp	ANSI/AHRI 460

a Open-circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the water flow rating of the tower at the given rated conditions divided by the fan motor nameplate power.

b Closed-circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the process water flow rating of the tower at the given rated conditions divided by the sum of the fan motor nameplate rated power and the integral spray pump motor nameplate power.

c Air-cooled condenser performance is defined as the heat rejected from the refrigerant divided by the fan motor nameplate power.

d Open cooling towers shall be tested using the test procedures in CTI ATC-105. Performance of factory assembled open cooling towers shall be either certified as base models as specified in CTI STD-201 or verified by testing in the field by a CTI approved testing agency. Open factory assembled cooling towers with custom options added to a CTI certified base model for the purpose of safe maintenance or to reduce environmental or noise impact shall be rated at 90 percent of the CTI certified performance of the associated base model or at the manufacturer’s stated performance, whichever is less. Base models of open factory assembled cooling towers are open cooling towers configured in exact accordance with the Data of Record submitted to CTI as specified by CTI STD-201. There are no certification requirements for field erected cooling towers.

e Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions.

For refrigerated warehouses or commercial refrigeration applications, condensers shall comply with requirements specified by §120.6(a) or §120.6(b)

Source: California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Table 110.2-G

Table 4-8: Electrically Operated Variable Refrigerant Flow Air Conditioners Minimum Efficiency Requirements

Equipment Type	Size Category	Heating Section Type	Sub-Category or Rating Condition	Minimum Efficiency	Test Procedure[a]
Variable refrigerant flow (VRF) air conditioners, air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-Split System	13.0 SEER	ANSI/AHRI 1230
Variable refrigerant flow (VRF) air conditioners, air cooled	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF Multi-Split System	11.2 EER 15.5 IEER[b]	ANSI/AHRI 1230
Variable refrigerant flow (VRF) air conditioners, air cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or none)	VRF Multi-Split System	11.0 EER 14.9 IEER[b]	ANSI/AHRI 1230
Variable refrigerant flow (VRF) air conditioners, air cooled	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or none)	VRF Multi-Split System	10.0 EER 13.9 IEER[b]	ANSI/AHRI 1230

a Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions.
b IEERs are only applicable to equipment with capacity control as specified by ASNI/AHRI 1230 test procedures.
Source: California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards Table 110.2-H

Table 4-9: Electrically Operated VRF Air-to-Air and Applied Heat Pumps Minimum Efficiency Requirements

Equipment Type	Size Category	Heating Section Type	Sub-Category or Rating Condition	Minimum Efficiency	Test Procedure[b]
VRF air cooled, (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multi-split system[a]	13 SEER	AHRI 1230
VRF air cooled, (cooling mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multi-split system[a]	11.0 EER 14.6 IEER[c]	AHRI 1230
VRF air cooled, (cooling mode)	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multi-split system[a]	10.6 EER 13.9 IEER[c]	AHRI 1230
VRF air cooled, (cooling mode)	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multi-split System[a]	9.5 EER 12.7 IEER[c]	AHRI 1230
VRF water source (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multi-split system[a] 86^{0}F entering water	12.0 EER 15.8 IEER	AHRI 1230
VRF water source (cooling mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multi-split system[a] 86^{0}F entering water	12.0 EER 15.8 IEER	AHRI 1230
VRF water source (cooling mode)	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 BTU/h	All	VRF multi-split system[a] 86^{0}F entering water	10.0 EER 13.8 IEER	AHRI 1230
VRF water source (cooling mode)	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multi-split system[a] 59^{0}F entering water	10.0 EER 12.0 IEER	AHRI 1230

(Cont.) Table 4-9: Electrically Operated VRF Air to Air and Applied Heat Pumps

VRF groundwater source (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multi-split system[a] 59^{0}F entering water	16.2 EER	AHRI 1230
VRF groundwater source (cooling mode)	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multi-split system[a] 59^{0}F entering water	13.8 EER	AHRI 1230
VRF ground source (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multi-split system[a] 77^{0}F entering water	13.4 EER	AHRI 1230
VRF ground source (cooling mode)	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multi-split system[a] 77^{0}F entering water	11.0 EER	AHRI 1230
VRF air cooled (heating mode)	<65,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity	--	VRF multi-split system	7.7 HSPF	AHRI 1230
VRF air cooled (heating mode)	≥65,000 Btu/h and <135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	--	VRF multi-split system 47ºF db/ 43ºF wb outdoor air	3.3 COP	AHRI 1230
VRF air cooled (heating mode)	≥65,000 Btu/h and <135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	--	VRF Multi-split system 17ºF db/15ºF wb outdoor air	2.25 COP	AHRI 1230
VRF air cooled (heating mode)	≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	--	VRF multi-split system 47^{0}F db/ 43^{0}F wb outdoor air	3.2 COP	AHRI 1230
VRF air cooled (heating mode)	≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	--	VRF multi-split system 17^{0}F db/ 15^{0}F wb outdoor air	2.05 COP	AHRI 1230
VRF water source (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	--	VRF multi-split system 68 ^{0}F entering water	4.3 COP	AHRI 1230
VRF water source (heating mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and <135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity	--	VRF multi-split system 68 ^{0}F entering water	4.3 COP	AHRI 1230
VRF water source (heating mode)	≥135,000 Btu/h and <240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	--	VRF multi-split system 68 ^{0}F entering water	4.0 COP	AHRI 1230
VRF water source (heating mode)	≥ 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	--	VRF multi-split System 68 ^{0}F entering water	3.9 COP	AHRI 1230
VRF groundwater source (heating mode)	<135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	---	VRF Multi-Split System 50ºF entering water	3.6 COP	AHRI 1230
VRF groundwater source (heating mode)	≥135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	---	VRF Multi-Split System 50ºF entering water	3.3 COP	AHRI 1230

VRF ground source (heating mode)	<135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	---	VRF Multi-Split System 32ºF entering water	3.1 COP	AHRI 1230
VRF ground source (heating mode)	≥135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	---	VRF Multi-Split System 32ºF entering water	2.8 COP	AHRI 1230 AHRI 1230

[a] Deduct 0.2 from the required EERs and IEERs for VRF multi-split system units with a heating recovery section.
[b] Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions.
[c] IEERs are only applicable to equipment with capacity control as specified by ANSI/AHRI 1230 test procedures.
Source: California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards, *Table 110.2-I*

Table 4-10: Warm-Air Furnaces and Combination Warm-Air Furnaces/Air-Conditioning Units, Warm-Air Duct Furnaces, and Unit Heaters

Equipment Type	Size Category (Input)	Subcategory or Rating Condition[b]	Minimum Efficiency	Test Procedure[a]
Warm-air furnace, gas-fired	≥ 225,00 Btu/h	Maximum capacity[b]	80% E_t	Section 2.39, thermal efficiency, ANSI Z21.47
Warm-air furnace, oil-fired	≥ 225,000 Btu/h	Maximum capacity[b]	81% E_t	Section 42, combustion, UL 727
Warm-air duct furnaces, gas-fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity[b]	80% E_c	Section 2.10, efficiency, ANSI Z83.8
Warm-air unit heaters, gas-fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity[b]	80% E_c	Section 2.10, efficiency, ANSI Z83.8
Warm-air unit heaters, oil-fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity[b]	81% E_c	Section 40, combustion, UL 731

[a] Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions.
[b] Compliance of multiple firing rate units shall be at maximum firing rate.
E_t = thermal efficiency, units must also include an interrupted or intermittent ignition device (IID), have jacket losses not exceeding 0.75 percent of the input rating, and have either power venting or a flue damper. A vent damper is an acceptable alternative to a flue damper for those furnaces where combustion air is drawn from the conditioned space.
E_c = combustion efficiency (100 percent less flue losses). See test procedure for detailed discussion.
As of August 8, 2008, according to the Energy Policy Act of 2005, units must also include IID and have either power venting or an automatic flue damper.
Combustion units not covered by the U.S. Department of Energy Code of Federal Regulations 10 CFR 430 (3-phase power or cooling capacity greater than or equal to 19 kW) may comply with either rating.
Source: California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards, *Table 110.2-J*

Table 4-11: Gas and Oil-Fired Boilers

Equipment Type	Subcategory	Size Category (Input)	Minimum Efficiency[b,c]	Minimum Efficiency[b,c]	Test Procedure[a]
			Before 3/2/2020	**After 3/2/2020**	
Boiler, hot water	Gas fired	< 300,000 Btu/h	82% AFUE	82% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
Boiler, hot water	Gas fired	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[d]	80% E_t	80% E_t	DOE 10 CFR Part 431
Boiler, hot water	Gas fired	> 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	82% E_c	82% E_c	DOE 10 CFR Part 431
Boiler, hot water	Oil fired	< 300,000 Btu/h	84% AFUE	84% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
Boiler, hot water	Oil fired	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[d]	82% E_t	82% E_t	DOE 10 CFR Part 431
Boiler, hot water	Oil fired	> 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	84% E_c	84% E_c	DOE 10 CFR Part 431
Boiler, steam	Gas fired	< 300,000 Btu/h	80% AFUE	80% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
Boiler, steam	Gas fired – all, except natural draft	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[d]	79% E_t	79% E_t	DOE 10 CFR Part 431
Boiler, steam	Gas fired – all, except natural draft	> 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	79% E_t	79% E_t	DOE 10 CFR Part 431
Boiler, steam	Gas fired, natural draft	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[d]	77% E_t	79% E_t	DOE 10 CFR Part 431
Boiler, steam	Gas fired, natural draft	> 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	77% E_t	79% E_t	DOE 10 CFR Part 431
Boiler, steam	Oil fired	< 300,000 Btu/h	82% AFUE	82% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
Boiler, steam	Oil fired	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[d]	81% E_t	81% E_t	DOE 10 CFR Part 431
Boiler, steam	Oil fired	> 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	81% E_t	81% E_t	DOE 10 CFR Part 431

[a] Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions.
[b] E_c = combustion efficiency (100% less flue losses). See reference document for detail information
[c] E_t = thermal efficiency. See test procedure for detailed information.
[d] Maximum capacity – minimum and maximum ratings as provided for and allowed by the unit's controls.
[e] Included oil-fired (residual).

Source: California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards *, Table 110.2-K*

In the above tables, where more than one efficiency standard or test method is listed, the requirements of both shall apply. For example, air-cooled air conditioners have an EER requirement for full-load operation and an IEER for part-load operation. The air conditioner must have both a rated EER and IEER equal to or higher than that specified in the Energy Standards at the specified Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (AHRI) standard rating conditions. Where equipment serves more than one function, it must comply with the efficiency standards applicable to each function.

When there is a requirement for equipment rated at its "maximum rated capacity" or "minimum rated capacity," the proper capacity shall be maintained by the controls during steady state operation. For example, a boiler with high/low firing must meet the efficiency requirements when operating at both its maximum capacity and minimum capacity.

Exceptions exist to the listed minimum efficiency for specific equipment. The first exception applies to water-cooled centrifugal water-chilling packages not designed for operation at ANSI/AHRI Standard 550/590 test conditions, which are:

a. 44 degrees Fahrenheit (F) leaving chilled water temperature
b. 85 degrees F entering condenser water temperature
c. Three gallons per minute per ton condenser water flow

Packages not designed to operate at these conditions must have maximum adjusted full load and NPLV ratings, which can be calculated in kW/ton, using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2.

Equation 4-1

$$Full\ Load\ Rating_{max,\ adj} = \frac{(Full\ Load\ Rating)}{K_{adj}}$$

Equation 4-2

$$NPLV\ Rating_{max,\ adj} = \frac{(IPLV\ Rating)}{K_{adj}}$$

The values for the Full Load and IPLV ratings are found in **Table 4-4**. K_{adj} is the product of A and B, as in Equation 4-3. A is calculated by entering the value for $LIFT$ determined by Equation 4-5 into the fourth level polynomial in Equation 4-4. B is found using Equation 4-6.

Equation 4-3

$$K_{adj} = A \times B$$

Equation 4-4

$$A = (1.4592 \times 10^{-7})(LIFT^4) - (3.46496 \times 10^{-5})(LIFT^3) + (3.14196 \times 10^{-3})(LIFT^2) - (0.147199)(LIFT) + 3.9302$$

Equation 4-5

$$LIFT = LvgCond - LvgEvap$$

Where:

LvgCond = Full load leaving condenser fluid temperature (°F)

LvgEvap = Full load leaving evaporator fluid temperature (°F)

Equation 4-6

$$B = (0.0015)(LvgEvap) + 0.934$$

Where:

LvgEvap = Full load leaving evaporator fluid temperature (°F)

The maximum adjusted full load and NPLV rating values are only applicable for centrifugal chillers meeting all of the following full-load design ranges:

1. Minimum leaving evaporator fluid temperature: 36 degrees F
2. Maximum leaving condenser fluid temperature: 115 degrees F
3. LIFT greater than or equal to 20 degrees F and less than or equal to 80 degrees F

Centrifugal chillers designed to operate outside of these ranges are not covered by this exception and therefore have no minimum efficiency requirements.

Exception 2 are for positive displacement (air-cooled and water-cooled) chillers with a leaving evaporator fluid temperature higher than 32 degrees F. These equipment shall comply instead with Table 4-4 (Table 110.2-D in the Energy Standards) when tested or certified with water at standard rating conditions, per the referenced test procedure.

Exception 3 is for equipment primarily serving refrigerated warehouses or commercial refrigeration systems. These systems must comply with the efficiency requirements of Energy Standards §120.6(a) or (b). For more information, see Chapter 10.

4.2.3 Equipment Not Covered by the Appliance Efficiency Regulations

§110.2 and §110.3.

Manufacturers of any appliance or equipment regulated by Section 1601 of the Appliance Efficiency Regulations are required to comply with the certification and testing requirements of Section 1608(a) of those regulations. This includes being listed in the Modernized Appliance Efficiency Database System.

Equipment not covered by the Appliance Efficiency Regulations, for which there is a minimum efficiency requirement in the Energy Standards, cannot be installed unless the required efficiency data is listed and verifiable in one of the following:

1. The Energy Commission's database of certified appliances available at: www.energy.ca.gov/appliances/.
2. An equivalent directory published by a federal agency.
3. An approved trade association directory as defined in Title 20 California Code of Regulations, Section 1606(h) such as the Air Conditioning, Heating and Refrigeration Institute (AHRI) Directory of Certified Products. This information is available at www.ahridirectory.org.
4. The Home Ventilating Institute (HVI) certified products directory available at www.hvi.org.

4.2.4 Controls for Heat Pumps With Supplementary Electric Resistance Heaters

§110.2(b)

The Energy Standards discourage use of electric resistance heating when an alternative method of heating is available. Heat pumps may contain electric resistance heat strips which act as a supplemental heating source. If this type of system is used, then controls must be put in place to prevent the use of the electric resistance supplementary heating when the heating load can be satisfied with the heat pump alone. The controls must set a cut-on temperature for compressor heating higher than the cut-on temperature for electric resistance heating. The cut-off temperature for compression heating must also be set higher than the cut-off temperature for electric resistance heating.

Exceptions exist for these control requirements if one of the following applies:

1. The electric resistance heating is for defrost and during transient periods such as start-ups and following room thermostat set points (or another control mechanism designed to preclude the unnecessary operation).
2. The heat pump is a room air-conditioner heat pump.

4.2.5 Thermostats

§110.2(c) and §120.2(b)4

All heating or cooling systems are required to have a thermostat with setback capability and is capable of at least four set points in a 24-hour period. In the case of a heat pump, the control requirements of Section 4.2.4 must also be met.

In addition, per §120.2(b)4, the thermostats on all single zone air conditioners and heat pumps must comply with the demand responsive control requirements of Section 110.12(a), also known as the Occupant controlled Smart Thermostat (OCST). See Appendix D of this compliance manual for guidance on compliance with demand responsive control requirements.

Exceptions to §120.2(b)4, setback thermostat and OCST requirements:

1. Systems serving zones that must have constant temperatures to protect a process or product (e.g. a laboratory or a museum).
2. The following HVAC systems are exempt:
    a. Gravity gas wall heaters
    b. Gravity floor heaters
    c. Gravity room heaters
    d. Non-central electric heaters
    e. Fireplaces or decorative gas appliance
    f. Wood stoves
    g. Room air conditioners

h. Room heat pumps

i. Packaged terminal air conditioners

j. Packaged terminal heat pumps

In most cases setup and setback are based on time of day only. However, see Section 4.5.1.3, Shut-off and Temperature Setup/Setback which describes those applications where occupancy sensing is also required to trigger setup and setback periods and shutting off ventilation air.

4.2.6 Furnace Standby Loss Controls

§110.2(d)

Forced air gas- and oil-fired furnaces with input ratings greater than or equal to 225,000 Btu/h are required to have controls and designs that limit their standby losses:

1. Either an intermittent ignition or interrupted device (IID) is required. Standing pilot lights are not allowed.
2. Either a power venting or a flue damper is required. A vent damper is an acceptable alternative to a flue damper for furnaces where combustion air is drawn from the conditioned space.

Any furnace with an input rating greater than or equal to 225,000 Btu/h that is not located within the conditioned space must have jacket losses not exceeding 0.75 percent of the input rating. This includes electric furnaces and fuel-fired units.

4.2.7 Open- and Closed-Circuit Cooling Towers

§110.2 (e)

All open and closed-circuit cooling towers with rated capacity of 150 tons or greater must have a control system that maximizes the cycles of concentration based on the water quality conditions. If the controls system is conductivity based, then the system must automate bleed and chemical feed based on conductivity. The installation criteria for the conductivity controllers must be in accordance with the manufacturer’s specifications to maximize accuracy. If the control system is flow based, then the system must be automated in proportion to metered makeup volume, metered bleed volume, and recirculating pump run time (or bleed time).

The makeup water line must be equipped with an analog flow meter and an alarm to prevent overflow of the sump in the event of water valve failure. The alarm system may send an audible signal or an alert through an energy management control system (EMCS).

Drift eliminators are louvered or comb-like devices that are installed at the top of the cooling tower to capture air stream water particles. These drift eliminators are now required to achieve drift reduction to 0.002 percent of the circulated water volume for counter-flow towers and 0.005 percent for crossflow towers.

Additionally, maximum achievable cycles of concentration must be calculated with an Energy Commission approved calculator based on local water quality conditions (which is reported annually by the local utility) and a Langelier Saturation Index (LSI) of 2.5 or less. The maximum cycles of concentration must be cataloged in the mechanical compliance documentation and reviewed and approved by the Professional Engineer (P.E.) of record. Energy Commission compliance document NRCC-MCH-E has a built-in calculator. An approved excel file LSIcalculator is located on the Energy Commission's website.

The website address for the excel calculator is: http://www.energy.ca.gov/title24/2013standards/documents/maximum_cycles_calculator.xls

The website address for the NRCC-MCH-06 is:

http://www.energy.ca.gov/2015publications/CEC-400-2015-033/appendices/forms/NRCC/

4.2.8 Pilot Lights

§110.5

Pilot lights are prohibited in the following circumstances:

1. Fan type central furnaces. This includes all space-conditioning equipment that distributes gas-heated air through duct work §110.5(a). This prohibition does not apply to radiant heaters, unit heaters, boilers or other equipment that does not use a fan to distribute heated air.
2. Household cooking appliances, unless the appliance does not have an electrical connection, and the pilot consumes less than 150 Btu/h §110.5(b).
3. Pool and spa heaters §110.5(c) and §110.5(d) respectively.
4. Indoor and outdoor fireplaces §110.5(e).

Example 4-1

Question

If a 15 ton (180,000 Btu/h) air-cooled packaged AC unit with a gas furnace rated at 260,000 Btu/h maximum heating capacity has an EER of 10.9, an IEER of 12.3, and a heating thermal efficiency of 78 percent, does it comply?

Answer

No. While the cooling side appears to not comply because both the EER and IEER are less than the values listed in Table 4-1, the EER and IEER values in the table are for units with electric heat. Footnote b reduces the required EER and IEER by 0.2 for units with heating sections other than electric resistance heat. Since this unit has gas heat, the EER requirement is actually 10.8 and the IEER requirement is 12.2 , this unit complies with the cooling requirements. The 0.2 deduction provided in Table 4-1 and Table 4-2 compensates for the higher fan power required to move air through the heat exchanger.

From Table 4-10, the heating efficiency must be at least 80 percent thermal efficiency. This unit has a 78 percent thermal efficiency and does not comply with the heating requirements; therefore, the entire unit does not comply since it's a packaged unit.

Example 4-2

Question

A 500,000 Btu/h gas-fired hot water boiler with high/low firing has a full load combustion efficiency of 82 percent, 78 percent thermal efficiency and a low-fire combustion efficiency of 80 percent. Does the unit comply?

Answer

No. Per Table 4-11, the thermal efficiency must be greater than 80 percent. This boiler's thermal efficiency is 78 percent (less than 80 percent) so it doesn't comply.

Example 4-3

Question

A 300-ton water-cooled centrifugal chiller is designed to operate at 44 degrees F chilled water supply, 90 degrees F condenser water return and 3 gpm/ton condenser water flow. What is the maximum allowable full load kW/ton and NPLV?

Answer

As the chiller is centrifugal and is designed to operate at a condition different from AHRI Standard 550/590 standard rating conditions (44 degrees F chilled water supply, 85 degrees F condenser water return, 3 gpm/ton condenser water flow), the appropriate efficiencies can be calculated using the Kadj equations.

From Table 4-4 (Equipment Type: water cooled, electrically operated, centrifugal; Size Category: ≥ 300 tons and < 600 tons), this chiller at AHRI rating conditions is required to have a maximum full load efficiency of 0.560 kW/ton and a maximum IPLV of 0.520 kW/ton for Path A and a maximum full load efficiency of 0.595 kW/ton and a maximum IPLV of 0.390 kW/ton for Path B.

The Kadj is calculated as follows:

LIFT = LvgCond – LvgEvap = 90F-44F = 46F

$A = (0.00000014592 \times (46)^4) - (0.0000346496 \times (46)^3) + (0.00314196 \times (46)^2) - (0.147199 \times (46)) + 3.9302 = 1.08813$

$B = (0.0015 \times 44) + 0.934 = 1.000$

$Kadj = A \times B = 1.08813$

For compliance with Path A, the maximum Full load kW/ton = 0.560 / 1.08813 = 0.515 kW/ton and the maximum NPLV= 0.520 / 1.08813 = 0.478 kW/ton

For compliance with Path B the maximum Full load kW/ton = 0.595 / 1.08813 = 0.547 kW/ton and the maximum NPLV= 0.390 / 1.08813 = 0.358 kW/ton

To meet the mandatory measures of 4.2.2 (Energy Standards §110.2) the chiller can comply with either the Path A or Path B requirement (footnote b in Table 4-4). To meet the prescriptive requirement of 4.6.2.8 (Energy Standards §140.4(i)) the chiller would have to meet or exceed the Path B requirement.

Example 4-4

Question

A 300 ton water-cooled chiller with a screw compressor that serves a thermal energy storage system is designed to operate at 34 degrees F chilled water supply, 82 degrees F condenser water supply and 94 degrees F condenser water return, does it have a minimum efficiency requirement and if so, what is the maximum full load kW/ton and NPLV?

Answer

As the chiller is positive displacement (screw and scroll compressors are positive displacement) and is designed to operate at a chilled water temperature above 32 degrees F it does have a minimum efficiency requirement per 4.2.2 (Exception 2 to §110.2(a)). From Table 4-4(Equipment Type: water cooled, electrically operated, positive displacement; Size Category: ≥ 300 tons) this chiller at AHRI rating conditions is required to have a maximum full load efficiency of 0.610 kW/ton and a maximum IPLV of 0.520 kW/ton for Path A and a maximum full load efficiency of 0.625 kW/ton and a maximum IPLV of 0.410 kW/ton for Path B.

The Kadj is calculated as follows:

LIFT = LvgCond – LvgEvap = 94F-34F = 60F
A = (0.00000014592 x (60)4) – (0.0000346496 x (60)3)+ (0.00314196 x (60)2) – (0.147199 x *(60)) + 3.9302=0.81613
B = (0.0015 x 34) + 0.934 = 0.98500
Kadj = A x B = 0.80388

For compliance with Path A, the maximum Full load kW/ton = 0.610 / 0.80388 = 0.759 kW/ton and the maximum NPLV= 0.520 / 0.80388 = 0.647 kW/ton. For compliance with Path B the maximum Full load kW/ton = 0.625 / 0.80388 = 0.777 kW/ton and the maximum NPLV= 0.410 / 0.80388 = 0.510 kW/ton. To meet the mandatory measures of 4.2.2 (Energy Standards §110.2) the chiller can comply with either the Path A or Path B requirement (footnote b in Table 4-4). To meet the prescriptive requirement of 4.6.2.8 (Energy Standards §140.4(i)) the chiller would have to meet or exceed the Path B requirement.

Example 4-5

Question

Are all cooling towers required to be certified by CTI?

Answer

No. Per footnote d in Table 4-7, field-erected cooling towers are not required to be certified. Factory-assembled towers must either be CTI-certified or have their performance verified in a field test (using ATC 105) by a CTI-approved testing agency. Furthermore, only base models need to be tested; options in the airstream, like access platforms or sound traps, will derate the tower capacity by 90 percent of the capacity of the base model or the manufacturer’s stated performance, whichever is less.

Example 4-6

Question

Are there any mandatory requirements for a water-to-water plate-and-frame heat exchanger?

Answer

Yes, Table 4-6 requires that it be rated per ANSI/AHRI 400. This standard ensures the accuracy of the ratings provided by the manufacturer.

4.2.9 Commercial Boilers

§120.9

A commercial boiler is a type of boiler with a capacity (rated maximum input) of 300,000 Btu/h or more and serving a space heating or water heating load in a commercial building.

A. Combustion air positive shut off shall be provided on all newly installed commercial boilers as follows:

1. All boilers with an input capacity of 2.5 MMBtu/h (2,500,000 Btu/h) and above, in which the boiler is designed to operate with a non-positive vent static pressure. This is sometimes referred to as natural draft or atmospheric boilers. Forced draft boilers, which rely on a fan to provide the appropriate amount of air into the combustion chamber, are exempt from this requirement.
2. All boilers where one stack serves two or more boilers with a total combined input capacity per stack of 2.5 MMBtu/h (2,500,000 Btu/h). This requirement applies to natural draft and forced draft boilers.

Combustion air positive shut off is a means of restricting air flow through a boiler combustion chamber during standby periods and is used to reduce standby heat loss. A flue damper and a vent damper are two examples of combustion air positive shut-off devices.

Installed dampers can be interlocked with the gas valve so that the damper closes and inhibits air flow through the heat transfer surfaces when the burner has cycled off, thus reducing standby losses. Natural draft boilers receive the most benefit from draft dampers because they have less resistance to airflow than forced draft boilers. Forced draft boilers rely on the driving force of the fan to push the combustion gases through an air path that has relatively higher resistance to flow than in a natural draft boiler. Positive shut off on a forced draft boiler is most important on systems with a tall stack height or multiple boiler systems sharing a common stack.

B. Boiler combustion air fans with motors 10 horsepower or larger shall meet one of the following for newly installed boilers:

1. The fan motor shall be driven by a variable speed drive
2. The fan motor shall include controls that limit the fan motor demand to no more than 30 percent of the total design wattage at 50 percent of design air volume

Electricity savings result from run time at part-load conditions. As the boiler firing rate decreases, the combustion air fan speed can be decreased.

C. Newly installed boilers with an input capacity of 5 MMBtu/h (5,000,000 Btu/h) and greater shall maintain excess (stack-gas) oxygen concentrations at less than or equal to 5 percent by volume on a dry basis over firing rates of 20 percent to 100 percent. Combustion air volume shall be controlled with respect to firing rate or measured flue gas oxygen concentration. Use of a common gas and combustion air control linkage or jack shaft is prohibited.

Boilers with steady state full-load thermal efficiency of 85 percent or higher are exempt from this requirement.

One way to meet this requirement is with parallel position control. Boilers mix air with fuel (usually natural gas although sometimes diesel or oil) to supply oxygen during combustion. Stoichiometric combustion is the ideal air/fuel ratio where the mixing proportion is correct, the fuel is completely burned, and the oxygen is entirely consumed. Boilers operate most efficiently when the combustion air flow rate is slightly higher than the stoichiometric air-fuel ratio. However, common practice almost always relies on excess air to ensure complete combustion, avoid unburned fuel and potential explosion, and prevent soot and smoke in the exhaust. The drawbacks of excess air are increased stack heat loss and reduced combustion efficiency.

Parallel positioning controls optimize the combustion excess air based on the firing rate of the boiler to improve the combustion efficiency of the boiler. It includes individual servo motors allowing the fuel supply valve and the combustion air damper to operate independently of each other. This system relies on preset fuel mapping (i.e., a pre-programmed combustion curve) to establish proper air damper positions (as a function of the fuel valve position) throughout the full range of burner fire rate. Developing the combustion curve is a manual process. It is performed in the field with a flue-gas analyzer in the exhaust stack, determining the air damper positions as a function of the firing rate/fuel valve position. Depending on the type of burner, a more consistent level of excess oxygen can be achieved with parallel position compared to single-point positioning control with parallel positioning, the combustion curve is developed at multiple points (firing rates), typically 10 to 25 points. Parallel positioning controls allow excess air to remain relatively low throughout a burner's firing range. Maintaining low excess air levels at all firing rates provides significant fuel and cost savings while still maintaining a safe margin of excess air to insure complete combustion.

The other method of control of combustion air volume is by measuring the flue gas oxygen concentration to optimize combustion efficiency. This method of control commonly called is oxygen trim control and can provide higher levels of efficiency than parallel positioning controls as it can also account for relative humidity of the combustion air. This control strategy relies on parallel positioning hardware and software as the basis but takes it a step further to allow operation closer to stoichiometric conditions. Oxygen trim control converts parallel positioning to a closed-loop control configuration with the addition of an exhaust gas analyzer and proportional-integral-derivative (PID) controller. This strategy continuously measures the oxygen content in the flue gas and adjusts the combustion air flow, thus continually tuning the air-fuel mixture.

4.3 Ventilation and Indoor Air Quality Requirements

§120.1

All of the ventilation and indoor air quality requirements are mandatory measures. Some measures require acceptance testing, which is addressed in Chapter 13.

Within a building, all occupied space that is normally used by humans must be continuously ventilated during occupied hours with outdoor air, using either natural or mechanical ventilation as specified in §120.1(c). Ventilation requirements for healthcare facilities should conform to the requirements in Chapter 4 of the California Mechanical Code.

Attached dwelling units in high-rise residential buildings are subject to the requirements of §120.1(b) while all other occupied spaces in a high-rise residential building are subject to the requirements of §120.1(c). The requirements of §120.1(b)2 are based on ASHRAE Standard 62.2, "Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Residential Buildings" with certain amendments. A copy of the relevant version of ASHRAE Standard 62.2-2016 may be obtained at the following URL:

https://www.ashrae.org/technical-resources/bookstore/standards-62-1-62-2

“Spaces normally used by humans” refers to spaces where people can be reasonably expected to remain for an extended period of time. Spaces where occupancy will be brief and intermittent that do not have any unusual sources of air contaminants do not need to be directly ventilated. For example:

- A closet, provided it is not normally occupied
- A storeroom that is only infrequently or briefly occupied. However, a storeroom that can be expected to be occupied for extended periods for clean-up or inventory must be ventilated, preferably with systems controlled by a local switch so that the ventilation system operates only when the space is occupied.

“Continuously ventilated during occupied hours” implies that minimum ventilation must be provided throughout the entire occupied period. Meaning variable air volume (VAV) systems must provide the code-required ventilation over the full range of operating supply airflow. Some means of dynamically controlling the minimum ventilation air must be provided.

For dwelling units’ subject to ASHRAE 62.2 requirements, the mechanical ventilation system must operate as designed in order for the dwelling to be in compliance. The ventilation system must be verified in accordance with the applicable procedures in NA2.2. When supply or exhaust systems are used, the dwelling unit enclosure leakage must be verified in accordance with the procedures in NA2.3.

4.3.1 Air Filtration

§120.1(b)1 and (c)1

Occupied spaces may be subjected to poor indoor air quality if poor quality outdoor air is brought in without first being cleaned. Particles less than 2.5 μm are referred to as “fine” particles, and because of their small size, can lodge deeply into the lungs. There is a strong correlation between exposure to fine particles and premature mortality. Other effects of particulate matter exposure include respiratory and cardiovascular disease. Because of these adverse health effects, advances in filtration technology and market availability, removal of fine particulate contaminants by use of filtration is reasonable and achievable. The Energy Standards require that filters have a particle removal efficiency equal to or greater than the minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) 13 when tested in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 52.2, or a particle size efficiency rating equal to or greater than 50 percent in the 0.3-1.0 μm and 85 percent in the 1.0-3.0 μm range when tested in accordance with AHRI Standard 680.

The following system types are required to provide air filtration:

a. Mechanical space conditioning (heating or cooling) systems that utilize forced air ducts greater than 10 feet in length to supply air to an occupied space. The total is determined by summing the lengths of all the supply and return ducts for the force air system.
b. Mechanical supply-only ventilation systems that provide outside air to an occupied space.
c. The supply side of mechanical balanced ventilation systems, including heat recovery ventilator and energy recovery ventilators that provide outside air to an occupied space.

4.3.1.1 Air Filter Requirements for Space Conditioning Systems in High-Rise Residential Dwelling Units

Space conditioning systems in high-rise residential dwelling units may use either of the two following compliance approaches:

a. Install a filter grille or accessible filter rack that accommodates a minimum 2-inch depth filter and install the appropriate filter.

b. Install a filter grille or accessible filter rack that accommodates a minimum 1-inch depth filter and install the appropriate filter. The filter/grille must be sized for a velocity of less than or equal to 150 feet (ft) per minute. The installed filter must be labeled to indicate the pressure drop across the filter at the design airflow rate for that return is less than or equal to 0.1-inch water column (w.c.) (25 PA).

   Use the following method to calculate the 1-inch depth filter face area required: Divide the design airflow rate (ft^3/ min) for the filter grille/rack by the maximum allowed face velocity 150 ft per min. This yields a value for the face area in square feet (sq ft). Since air filters are sold using nominal sizes in terms of inches, convert the face area to sq inches by multiplying the face area (sq ft) by a conversion factor of 144 sq inches by sq ft. Summarizing:

Equation 4-7

$$Filter\ Nominal\ Face\ Area\ (sq\ inch) = airflow\ (cu\ ft\ per\ minute\ [CFM]) \div 150 \times 144$$

Air Filter Requirements for Ventilation Systems in High-Rise Residential Dwelling Units

Ventilation system filters in high-rise residential dwelling units must conform to the following requirements:

a. Filters with a depth of 1 inch or greater are allowed

b. The design airflow rate and maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop at the design airflow rate applicable to each air filter device must be determined by the system designer or installer.

c. The ventilation systems must deliver the volume of air specified by §120.1(b) with filters in place as verified by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures in NA1, and NA2.2.

4.3.1.2 Air Filter Requirements for Space Conditioning Systems and Ventilation Systems in Nonresidential and Hotel/Motel Buildings

Space conditioning systems and ventilation systems in nonresidential and hotel/motel occupancies may use either of the two following compliance approaches:

a. Install a filter grille or accessible filter rack sized by the system designer that accommodates a minimum 2-inch depth filter and install the appropriate filter.

b. Install a filter grille or accessible filter rack that accommodates a minimum 1-inch depth filter and install the appropriate filter. The filter/grille must be sized for a velocity of less than or equal to 150 ft per minute. The installed filter must be labeled to indicate the pressure drop across the filter at the design airflow rate for that return is less than or equal to 0.1-inch w.c. (25 PA).

   Use the following method to calculate the 1 inch per min. This yields a value for the face area in sq ft. Since air filters are sold using nominal sizes in terms of inches, convert the face area to sq in by multiplying the face area (sq ft) by a conversion factor of 144 sq inch/sq ft. Refer also to Equation 4-7 above.

Field verification and diagnostic testing of system airflow in accordance with the procedures in NA1 (HERS verification) is not required for nonresidential and hotel/motel occupancies.

4.3.1.3 Air Filter Compliance for High-Rise Residential Dwelling Units

§120.1(b)1

Energy Standards Section 120.1(b)1D requires all systems to be designed to accommodate the clean-filter pressure drop imposed by the system air filter device(s). This applies to space conditioning systems and the ventilation system types described in Sections 4.3.1.1 and 4.3.1.2 above. A designer or installer must determine the design airflow rate and maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop. It must then be posted by the installer on a sticker or label inside the filter grille or near the filter rack, according to Section 4.3.1.3.2 below.

Designers of space conditioning systems must determine the total of the system external static pressure losses from filters, coils, ducts, and grilles, such that the sum is not greater than the air handling unit's available static pressure at the design airflow rate. Therefore, air filters should be sized to minimize static pressure drop across the filter during system operation.

4.3.1.3.1 Factors That Affect Air Filter Pressure Drop

Air filter pressure drop can be reduced by increasing the amount of air filter media surface area available to the system’s airflow. Increased media surface area can be accomplished by adjusting one, two, or three of the following factors:

a. **Adjust the number of pleats of media per inch inside the air filter frame.** The number of pleats per inch inside the filter frame is determined by the manufacturer's filter model design and is held constant for all filter sizes of the same manufacturer's model. For example, all 3M Filtrete 1900 filters will have the same media type, the same MERV rating, and the same number of pleats of media per inch inside the filter frame, regardless of the nominal filter size (20 inches by 30 inches or 24 inches by 24 inches, etc.). Generally, as the number of pleats per inch is increased, the pressure drop is reduced, if all other factors remain constant. The pressure drop characteristics of air filters vary widely between air filter manufacturers and between air filter models, largely due to the number of pleats per inch in the manufacturer's air filter model design. System designers and system owners cannot change the manufacturer's filter model characteristics. They can select a superior air filter model from a manufacturer that provides greater airflow at a lower pressure drop by comparing the filter pressure drop performance shown on the air filter manufacturer's product label (see example label in Figure 4-3).

b. **Adjust the face area of the air filter and filter grille.** Face area is the nominal cross-sectional area of the air filter, perpendicular to the direction of the airflow through the filter. Face area is also the area of the filter grille opening in the ceiling or wall. The face area is determined by multiplying the length times width of the filter face (or filter grille opening). The nominal face area for a filter corresponds to the nominal face area of the filter grille in which the filter is installed. For example, a nominal 20 inch by 30-inch filter has a face area of 600 sq inches and would be installed in a nominal 20 inch by 30-inch filter grille. Generally, as the total system air filter face area increases, the pressure drop is reduced if all other factors remain constant. Total system air filter face area can be increased by specifying a larger area filter/grille, or by using additional/multiple return filters/grilles, summing the face areas. The filter face area is specified by the system designer or installer.

c. **Adjust the depth of the filter and filter grille.** Air filter depth is the nominal filter dimension parallel to the direction of the airflow through the filter. Nominal filter depths readily available for purchase include one, two, four, and six inches. Generally, as the system air filter depth increases, the pressure drop is reduced if all other factors remain constant. For example, increasing filter depth from one inch to two inches nominally doubles the filter media surface area without increasing the filter face area. The filter depth is specified by the system designer or installer.

4.3.1.3.2 Filter Access and Filter Grille Sticker — Design Airflow and Pressure Drop

All filters must be accessible to facilitate replacement.

a. **Air filter grille sticker**. A designer or installer must determine the design airflow rate and maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop. It must then be posted by the installer on a sticker inside or near the filter grille/rack. The design airflow and initial resistance posted on this sticker should correspond to the conditions used in the system design calculations. This requirement applies to space conditioning systems and also to the ventilation system types described in Sections 4.3.1.1 and 4.3.1.2 above.

An example of an air filter grille sticker showing the design airflow and pressure drop for the filter grille/rack is shown in Figure 4-2.

b. **Air filter manufacturer label.** Space conditioning system filters are required to be labelled by the manufacturer to indicate the pressure drop across the filter at several airflow rates. The manufacturer's air filter label (see Figure 4-3) must display information that indicates the filter can meet the design airflow rate for that return grille/rack at a pressure drop less than or equal to the value shown on the installer's air filter grille sticker.

Figure 4-2: Example of Installer's Filter Grille Sticker

Air Filter Performance Requirement	Air Filter Performance Requirement	Maintenance Instructions
Airflow Rate (CFM) Must be greater than or equal to the value shown	**Initial Resistance (IWC)** Must be less than or equal to the value shown	Use only replacement filters that are rated to simultaneously meet both of the performance requirements specified on this sticker.
750	0.1	Use only replacement filters that are rated to simultaneously meet both of the performance requirements specified on this sticker.

Source: California Energy Commission

Figure 4-3: Example Manufacturer's Filter Label

Ex

MERV	(µm)	0.30-1.0	1.0-3.0	3.0-10	Airflow Rate (CFM)	615	925	1230	1540	2085*	*Max Rated Airflow
13	PSE (%)	62	87	95	Initial Resistance (IWC)	0.07	0.13	0.18	0.25	0.38	

Source: California Energy Commission

4.3.1.3.3 Air Filter Selection

In order for a filter to meet the system's specifications for airflow and pressure drop, it must be rated by the manufacturer to simultaneously provide more than the specified airflow at less than the specified pressure drop. It is unlikely that a filter will be available that is rated to have the exact airflow and pressure drop ratings specified, so filters should be selected that are rated to have less than the specified pressure drop at the specified airflow rate, otherwise select filters that are rated to have greater than the specified airflow rate at the specified pressure drop. See Figure 4-4 for an example of an installer's filter grille sticker that provides an air filter rating specification for minimum airflow of 750 cfm at maximum pressure drop 0.1-inch w.c.

Air filter manufacturers may make supplementary product information available to consumers to assist with selecting the proper replacement filters. This product information may provide more detailed information about their filter model airflow and pressure drop performance - details such as airflow and pressure drop values that are intermediate values that lie between the values shown on their product label. The information may be published in tables, graphs, or presented in software applications available on the internet or at the point of sale.

Figure 4-4 below shows a graphical representation of the initial resistance (pressure drop) and airflow rate ordered pairs given on the example air filter manufacturer's label shown in Figure 4-3 above. The graph in Figure 4-4 makes it possible to visually determine the airflow rate at 0.1-inch w.c. pressure drop for which the values are not shown on the manufacturer's filter label.

If there is no supplementary manufacturer information available and it is necessary to determine a filter model's performance at an airflow rate or pressure drop, linear interpolation may be used. Example formulas for are shown below.

This method may be used to determine an unknown pressure drop corresponding to a known airflow rate by use of Equation 4-8a, or it may also be used to determine an unknown airflow rate corresponding to a known pressure drop by use of Equation 4-8b.

$$\mathbf{p = p_1 + [(f-f_1) \div (f_2-f_1)] \times (p_2 - p_1)} \qquad \text{Equation 4-8a}$$

where:

f = a <u>known</u> <u>flow</u> value between f_1 and f_2

p = the <u>unknown</u> <u>pressure</u> <u>drop</u> value corresponding to f

p_1 and p_2 = known values that are less than and greater than p respectively

f_1 and f_2 are the known values corresponding to p_1 and p_2

$$\mathbf{f = f_1 + [(p-p_1) \div (p_2-p_1)] \times (f_2 - f_1)} \qquad \text{Equation 4-8b}$$

where:

p = a <u>known</u> <u>pressure drop</u> value between p_1 and p_2

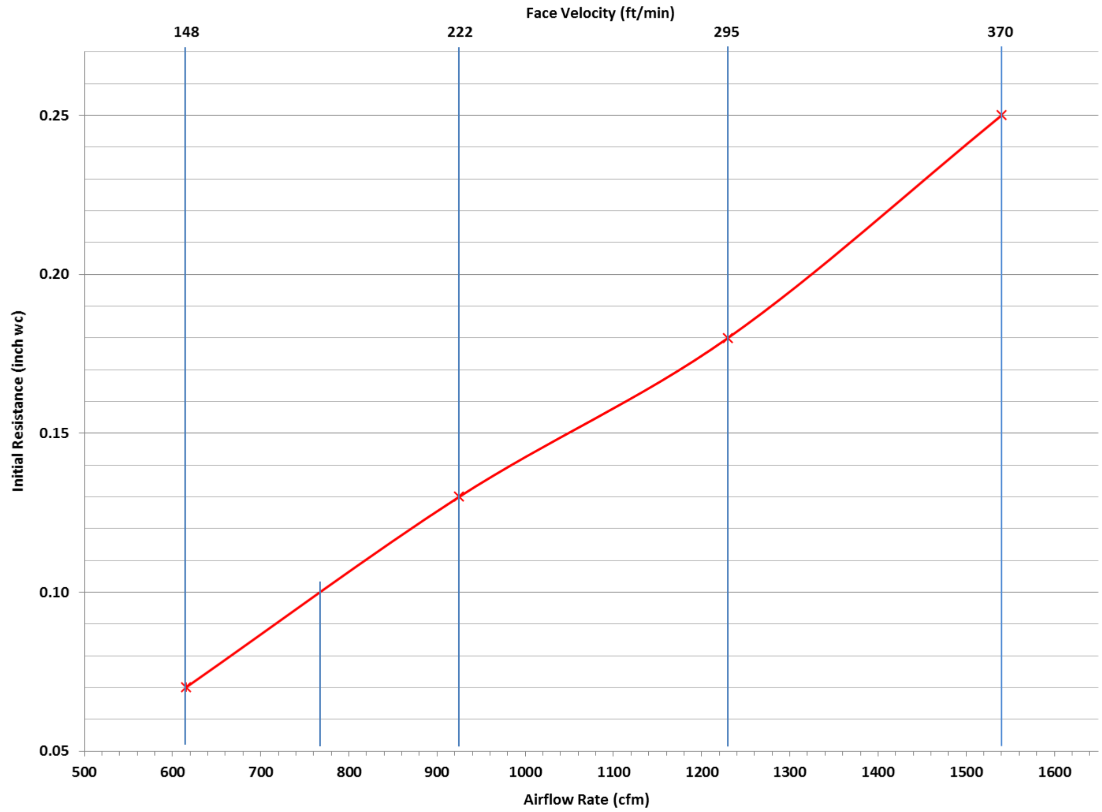
f = the <u>unknown</u> <u>flow</u> value corresponding to p

f_1 and f_2 = known values that are less than and greater than f respectively

p_1 and p_2 are the known values corresponding to f_1 and f_2

See Example 4-7 for sample calculations that determine the filter's rated airflow corresponding to a known pressure drop specification (0.1-inch w.c.).

Figure 4-4: Plot of Pressure Drop vs. Airflow for a 20" X 30" X 1" Depth Air Filter From Manufacturer Label Information



Source: California Energy Commission

Example 4-7: Filter Selection Using Linear Interpolation

Question

Does the air filter label in Figure 4-3 indicate the filter would meet the airflow (750 cfm) and pressure drop (0.1-inch w.c.) requirements shown on the installer filter grille sticker in figure 4-2? How the airflow rate at 0.1-inch w.c. for the manufacturer's filter label shown in Figure 4-3 be determined?

Answer

The filter must be rated to provide greater than 750 cfm at the specified 0.1-inch w.c. pressure drop, or equivalently: the filter must be rated to provide a pressure drop less than 0.1-inch w.c. at the specified 750 cfm.

Referring to equation 4-8b, calculate the unknown value "f" in cfm that corresponds to the known value "p" of 0.1-inch w.c.

Referring to Figure 4-4: p_1=0.7, p_2=0.13, f_1=615, f_2=925, and applying Equation 4-8b:

615 + [(0.1-0.07) ÷ (0.13-0.07)] x (925-615) yields 770 cfm

Therefore, since the filter is rated for greater than 750 cfm at 0.1-inch w.c., the filter complies.

Example 4-8: Filter Sizing

Question

A 1,200-cfm furnace is being installed in a new dwelling unit. It has a 20" x 20" x 1” inch filter rack furnished with a 1-inch depth filter installed in the unit. Is this filter in compliance?

Answer

The nominal face area of the filter rack is 20 inches by 20 inches to equal 400 sq in and since it is a 1-inch filter, the face area may not be less than 1200 (cfm)/150 (ft/min) x144 (in^2 / ft^2) = 1,152 sq in. Therefore, this filter installation does not comply.

Example 4-9

Question

For the same 1200 cfm furnace, what other options are there?

Answer:

The filter will be in compliance if it has a depth of 2” or more and is properly sized by the system designer such that the duct system as a whole will be capable of meeting the HERS verification for fan efficacy specified in Section 150.0(m)13.

Otherwise, the required total system filter face area of 1,152 sq inches must be met using multiple remote wall or ceiling filter grilles for which the sum of the face areas are equal to or greater than 1152 sq inches, and the filters must be rated for pressure drop of 0.1 inch w.c. or less at the design airflow rates of each filter grille.

For any filter, the pressure drop, efficiency, and length of time the filter can remain in operation without becoming fully loaded with dust can all be improved by using filters that are deeper than 1 inch. As the depth of the filter is increased, the pressure drop across the filter at the same face area will be greatly reduced.

Example 4-10

Question

A ductless split system is being installed in a home. Must a designated MERV 13 filter be used?

Answer

No, the filtration requirements do not apply unless there is at least 10 feet of duct is attached to the unit.

Example 4-11

Question

If a customer has allergies and wants a MERV 16 or better filter. Is this in compliance?

Answer

Yes, a filtration greater than MERV 13 meets (exceeds) the minimum particle removal efficiency requirement, thus may be used provided all other applicable requirements in 120.1(b)1 are complied with.

4.3.2 High-Rise Residential Dwelling Unit Mechanical Ventilation

§120.1(b)2

This section will cover compliance and enforcement, typical design solutions, energy consumption issues, and the requirements specified by ASHRAE 62.2 as amended in the 2019 Energy Standards. The key changes from 2016 to 2019, applicable to high-rise residential dwelling units, of ASHRAE 62.2 and Title 24 Part 6 amendments to 62.2 include:

a. ASHRAE 62.2 now covers mid-rise and high-rise residential occupancies as well as single-family detached and low-rise attached multifamily dwellings.

b. Compliance with required dwelling unit ventilation using *variable* mechanical ventilation systems (intermittent or variable operation) requires the average mechanical ventilation rate (in cfm) over a three-hour period to be greater than or equal to the ventilation rate used for continuous ventilation. More complicated control strategies may be used if the system operation complies with the "relative exposure" calculations in normative Appendix C of ASHRAE 62.2.

c. Two options for compliance with dwelling unit ventilation are allowed for multifamily attached dwelling units: (1) installation of a balanced ventilation system, or (2) installation of an exhaust or supply-only system accompanied by sealing to a leakage rate of not more than 0.3 cfm 50 per sq. ft. of dwelling unit enclosure surface area. Home Energy Rating System (HERS) verification of dwelling unit ventilation and any applicable envelope leakage is required in accordance with NA1 and NA2 procedures. Certified Acceptance Test Technicians (ATT) may perform these field verifications only if the Acceptance Test Technician Certification Provider (ATTCP) has been approved to provide this service.

d. Kitchen range hood fans are now required to be verified by a HERS rater. The new verification protocol requires comparing the installed model to ratings in the HVI directory of certified ventilation products to confirm the installed range hood is rated to meet the required airflow and sound requirements specified in ASHRAE 62.2. Kitchen range hood fans that exhaust more than 400 cfm at their minimum speed are exempt from this requirement. Kitchen range hoods are required to discharge the exhaust airflow to outside. Recirculation range hood types are not allowed.

Compliance with the dwelling unit ventilation airflow specified in ASHRAE 62.2 is required in new dwelling units. Alterations to components of existing buildings that previously met any requirements of ASHRAE 62.2 must continue to meet requirements upon completion of the alteration(s).

4.3.2.1 Key Requirements for Most Newly Constructed Buildings

a. A dwelling unit mechanical ventilation system shall be provided. Typical solutions are described in Section 4.3.2.5 below. The airflow rate provided by the system shall be confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the applicable procedures specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2.2.

b. Kitchens and bathrooms shall have local exhaust fans vented to outdoors.

c. Clothes dryers shall be vented to outdoors.

4.3.2.2 Other Indoor Air Quality Design Requirements

a. Ventilation air shall come from outdoors. It should not be transferred from adjacent dwelling units, garages, unconditioned attics or crawl spaces.

b. Ventilation system controls should be labeled. The dwelling occupant should be provided with instructions on how to operate the system.

c. Combustion appliances should be properly vented. Exhaust systems should be designed to prevent back drafting.

d. Walls and openings between the dwelling and a garage should be sealed or gasketed.

e. Habitable rooms should have windows with an opening ventilation area of at least 4 percent of the floor area.

f. Mechanical systems including heating and air-conditioning systems that supply air to habitable spaces shall have MERV 13 filters or better and be designed to accommodate the system's air filter's rated pressure drop at the system's design airflow rate.

g. Dedicated air inlets (not exhaust) that are part of the ventilation system design should be located away from known sources of outdoor contaminants.

h. A carbon monoxide alarm should be installed in each dwelling unit in accordance with NFPA Standard 720.

4.3.2.3 Air-Moving Equipment Requirements

Air-moving equipment used to meet the dwelling unit ventilation requirement and the local ventilation exhaust requirement should be rated in terms of airflow and sound:

a. Dwelling unit ventilation and continuously operating local exhaust fans must be rated at a maximum of 1.0 sone.

b. Demand controlled local exhaust fans must be rated at a maximum of 3.0 sone.

c. Kitchen range hood fans must be rated at a maximum of 3.0 sone at one or more airflow settings greater than or equal to 100 cfm.

d. Remotely located air-moving equipment (mounted outside habitable spaces) are exempt from the sound requirements provided there is at least four feet of ductwork between the fan and the interior grille.

4.3.2.4 Compliance and Enforcement

Compliance with ASHRAE 62.2 requirements must be verified by the enforcement agency, except for the following requirements that must be HERS verified in accordance with the procedures in Nonresidential Appendix NA1 and NA2.2:

a. Dwelling unit ventilation airflow rate

b. HVI ratings for kitchen range hood fans

All applicable certificates of compliance, installation, and acceptance need be completed before the certificate of verification must be registered with an approved HERS provider.

4.3.2.5 Typical Solutions for Multifamily Dwelling Unit Ventilation

4.3.2.5.1 System Types

There are generally three system types available for meeting the dwelling unit ventilation requirement (refer to Residential Compliance Manual Section 4.6.2 for descriptions of the system types identified below):

a. Exhaust ventilation - air is exhausted from the dwelling unit and replaced by infiltration.

b. Supply ventilation - outdoor air is supplied directly to the dwelling unit after being filtered.

c. Balanced ventilation – may be a single packaged unit containing supply and exhaust fans that moves approximately the same airflow through a heat or energy recovery core or may utilize separate fans without heat exchange. In both cases air supplied from outdoors must be filtered (see Section 4.3.1 for air filter requirements).

Exhaust and balanced systems are most frequently used in multifamily buildings, but supply ventilation may also be used. Exhaust (or supply) systems in low-rise buildings typically use individual fans located in the dwelling units that exhaust directly to outdoors.

4.3.2.5.2 Multifamily Building Central Shaft Ventilation Systems

Use of central ventilation fans/shafts that are shared with multiple dwelling units in the building are more common in midrise and high-rise buildings. When a supply or exhaust system provides dwelling unit ventilation to more than one dwelling unit, the airflows in each dwelling unit must be equal to or greater than the required (minimum) ventilation rate, and the airflows for each dwelling unit must be balanced to be no more than 20 percent greater than the specified rate. (See Energy Standards Section 120.1[b]2Av). The specified rate for the systems that share a common fan/shaft may be the minimum rate required for compliance, in which case each of the dwellings receiving airflow from a common fan/shaft must have ventilation airflow no more than 20 percent greater than the minimum dwelling unit ventilation airflow required by Equation 120.1-B. If the lowest airflow provided to any of the dwellings served by the common fan/shaft is a specific percent value greater than the minimum required for compliance, then the each of the dwellings receiving airflow from that common fan/shaft must have ventilation airflow no more than 20 percent greater than that lowest dwelling unit ventilation airflow. For example, if the lowest ventilation airflow among all dwellings served by the common fan/shaft is 2 percent greater than the minimum required for compliance, then all dwellings served by the common fan/shaft must be balanced to have ventilation airflow that is no more than 22 percent greater than the minimum ventilation airflow required for compliance.

These systems must utilize balancing devices to ensure the dwelling-unit airflows can be adjusted to meet this balancing requirement. These system balancing devices may include but are not limited to constant air regulation devices, orifice plates, and variable speed central fans.

Since supply and exhaust ventilation system types are required to operate continuously in multifamily dwellings (see Section 120.1(b)2Aivb2), and since Central Fan Integrated (CFI) systems are prohibited from operating continuously to provide the required dwelling unit ventilation (see Section 120.1(b)2Aii, the CFI ventilation system type is not allowed to be used in multifamily dwellings. Refer to residential compliance manual Section 4.6.2.3 for descriptions of the CFI ventilation system type. Certified Acceptance Test Technicians (ATT) may perform these field verifications only if the Acceptance Test Technician Certification Provider (ATTCP) has been approved to provide this service.

4.3.2.5.3 Multifamily Dwelling Unit Compartmentalization – Reducing Dwelling Unit Enclosure Leakage

Transfer air is the airflow between adjacent dwelling units in a multifamily building, which can be a major contributor to poor indoor air quality in the dwelling units. Transfer airflow is caused by differences in pressure between adjacent dwelling units, which forces air to flow through leaks in the dwelling unit enclosure. The pressure differences may be due to stack effects and wind effects, but unbalanced mechanical ventilation is also a major contributor to this problem. It is desirable to minimize or eliminate leaks in all of the dwelling enclosures in the building – to compartmentalize the dwellings - to prevent pollutants such as tobacco smoke, pollution generated from food preparation in the kitchen, odors, and other pollutants from being transferred to adjacent dwellings in the building.

Title 24 provides two compliance paths for mechanical ventilation that improve compartmentalization in multifamily buildings (choose one):

a. Install a balanced ventilation system. This may consist of either a single ventilation unit such as an energy recovery ventilator or heat recovery ventilation (HRV) or may consist of separate supply and exhaust fans that operate simultaneously and are controlled to balance the supply and exhaust airflows. The outdoor ventilation supply air must be filtered (MERV 13 or better).

b. Verify that the dwelling unit leakage is not greater than 0.3 cfm per sq. ft of dwelling unit enclosure area using the procedures in NA2.3 (blower door test). If the dwelling unit enclosure passes this blower door test, use of continuously operating supply ventilation systems, or continuously operating exhaust ventilation systems in that dwelling is allowed.

4.3.2.5.4 Dwelling Unit Ventilation Airflow Measurement

Nonresidential Appendix NA2.2.4 provides direction for measurement of supply, exhaust, and balanced system types. These measurement procedures are applicable when there is a fixed airflow rate required for compliance, such as for systems that operate continuously at a specific airflow rate or systems that operate intermittently at a fixed speed (averaged over any three-hour period), according to a fixed timer pattern for which the programmed pattern is verifiable by a HERS rater on site (Refer to ASHRAE 62.2 Section 4.5.1 Short Term Average Ventilation).

Variable or intermittent operation that complies with ASHRAE 62.2 Sections 4.5.2, and 4.5.3 complies with the dwelling unit mechanical ventilation requirements by use of varying ventilation airflow rates based on complicated calculations for relative exposure as specified in ASHRAE 62.2 normative appendix C. These calculation procedures provide the basis for "smart" ventilation controls implemented by use of digital controls that rely on the manufacturer's product-specific algorithms or software. Any ventilation system models that use these complex ventilation system controls in a ventilation product designed to be used to comply with Energy Standards Section 120.1 must submit an application to the Energy Commission to have the ventilation technology approved. These manufacturers are expected to provide with their applications, evidence that the system will perform to provide the required dwelling unit mechanical ventilation, and also provide a method that could be used by a HERS rater to verify that an installed system is operating as designed.

Listings of systems approved by the Energy Commission and certified by the manufacturer are located at the following URL:

http://www.energy.ca.gov/title24/equipment_cert/imv/

4.3.2.5.5 Dwelling Unit Ventilation Rate (Section 4 of ASHRAE 62.2)

Dwelling unit ventilation systems may operate continuously or on a short-term basis. If fan operation is not continuous, the average ventilation rate over any three-hour period must be greater than or equal to the Q_{tot} value calculated using Equation 4-9 in this section.

ASHRAE 62.2 provides for scheduled ventilation and real time control, but these control approaches require “equivalent exposure” calculations using methods in Normative Appendix C and complex controls would be required to operate the fan.

Use of a building infiltration credit is not applicable to calculation of the required dwelling unit mechanical ventilation for multifamily dwelling units.

When the performance compliance approach is used, the compliance software automatically calculates the ventilation rate based on Equations 4-9, and Q_{tot} is reported on the NRCC-PRF-01-E.

4.3.2.5.6 Total Ventilation Rate (Q_{tot})

The total ventilation rate is the combined volume of ventilation air provided by infiltration and the mechanical ventilation provided from fans, as follows:

$$Q_{tot} = 0.03A_{floor} + 7.5(N_{br} + 1) \qquad \textit{Equation 4-9}$$

Where:

Q_{tot} = total required ventilation rate (cfm)

A_{floor} = conditioned floor area (ft^2)

N_{br} = number of bedrooms (not less than one)

For multifamily units, the installed ventilation system must deliver the total ventilation rate Q_{tot} calculated from Equation 4-9.

Example 4-12: Required Ventilation

Question

What is the required continuous ventilation rate for a three-bedroom, 1,800 sq. ft. dwelling unit?

Answer:

Equation 4-9 yields a total ventilation rate of 84 cfm

$$Q_{tot} = 0.03A_{floor} + 7.5(N_{br} + 1) = 0.03(1800) + 7.5(3 + 1) = 84 \text{ cfm}$$

Example 4-13

Question

An HRV that delivers 80 cfm of outdoor air and exhausts 90 cfm of indoor air is being installed. The dwelling is required to have 86 cfm of ventilation airflow. Can this system be used?

Answer:

No. For balanced systems the supply and exhaust airflows can be averaged, and in this case, they average 85 cfm, which is slightly less than required 86 cfm.

The nominal rating of a fan can be very different than what it actually delivers when installed and connected to ductwork. Designers should always include some safety margin when sizing equipment. The length and size of ducting should be used to calculate the pressure drop. This is why dwelling unit ventilation rates must be verified by a HERS rater.

Example 4-14

Question

A 2,300 sq. ft. dwelling unit has exhaust fans running continuously in two bathrooms providing a total exhaust flow rate of 90 cfm, but the requirement is 98 cfm. What are the options for providing the additional 8 cfm?

Answer:

The required additional cfm could be provided either by increasing the size of either or both exhaust fans such that the combined airflow exceeds 98 cfm. Some fan models have speed adjustments which allow adjusting the fan airflow in the field after installation.

Example 4-15

Question

A builder wants to provide controls that disable the ventilation system, so it does not bring in outside air during the hottest two hours of the day. Equation 4-9 determined the system needs to be 80 cfm continuous. How large must the fan be?

Answer:

If the average rate over three hours is 80 cfm and the fan only operates one hour, then it must be capable of delivering 3 x 80 = 240 cfm. ASHRAE 62.2 does not allow averaging ventilation over more than a three-hour period.

4.3.2.6 Control and Operation

From ASHRAE 62.2, Section 4.4, Control and Operation. A readily accessible manual on/off control, including but not limited to a fan switch or a dedicated branch-circuit overcurrent device, shall be provided. Controls shall include text or an icon indicating the system's function.

Exception: For multifamily dwelling units, the manual on/off control shall not be required to be readily accessible.

From Energy Standards Section 150.0(o)1I: Compliance with ASHRAE 62.2 Section 4.4 (Control and Operation) shall require manual switches associated with dwelling unit ventilation systems to have a label clearly displaying the following text, or equivalent text: "This switch controls the indoor air quality ventilation for the home. Leave it on unless the outdoor air quality is very poor."

ASHRAE 62.2 requires that the ventilation system have an override control that is accessible to the occupants. The control must be capable of being accessed quickly and easily by the occupants. It can be a labeled wall switch, a circuit breaker located in the electrical panel, or it may be integrated into a labeled wall-mounted control. It cannot be buried in the insulation in the attic or inside the installed ventilation fan cabinet. The dwelling unit occupant must have easy access to modify the fan control settings or turn off the system if necessary.

For multifamily dwelling units, the manual on/off control is not required to be readily accessible to the dwelling unit occupant(s). Instead, the ventilation control may be located such that it is readily accessible to the person in charge of the multifamily building maintenance. This control strategy may be appropriate for multifamily buildings that use unbalanced (supply-only or exhaust-only) system types for which the Energy Standards require that all of the ventilation systems in the building operate continuously. Continuous operation of all ventilation fans in the building tends to minimize ventilation fan-induced pressure differences between adjoining dwellings, thus, to reduce the leakage of transfer air between dwelling units. Transfer airflows that that originate in one dwelling unit may adversely affect the indoor air quality of the other dwelling units in the building if the transfer air contains pollutants such as tobacco smoke and PM2.5 from kitchen range cooking activities.

Balanced dwelling unit ventilation systems may operate continuously. If fan operation is not continuous, the average ventilation rate over any three-hour period must be greater than or equal to the minimum dwelling unit ventilation rate calculated by Equation 4-9 above.

Bathroom exhaust fans may serve a dual purpose to provide whole-dwelling unit ventilation operating at a low constant airflow rate, and also provide local demand-controlled ventilation (DCV) at a higher "boost" airflow rate when needed. For these system types, the continuous whole-building airflow operation must have an on/off override which may be located in the bathroom or in a remote accessible location.

The "boost" function is controlled by a separate wall switch located in the bathroom, or by a motion sensor or humidistat located in the bathroom.

Time-of-day timers or duty cycle timers can be used to control intermittent dwelling unit ventilation. Manual crank timers cannot be used, since the system must operate automatically without intervention by the occupant.

See Section 4.3.2.4.4 for additional information about Energy Commission approval of ventilation controls.

Example 4-16: Control Options

Question

A bathroom exhaust fan is used to provide dwelling unit ventilation. The fan is designed to be operated by a typical wall switch. Is a label on the wall plate necessary to comply with the requirement that controls be “appropriately labeled”?

Answer:

Yes. Since the fan is providing the required dwelling unit ventilation, a label is needed to inform the occupant that this switch controls the indoor air quality ventilation for the home and directs the occupant to leave it on unless the outdoor air quality is very poor. If the exhaust fan were serving only the local exhaust requirement for the bathroom, then a label would not be required.

4.3.2.7 Local Exhaust (Section 5 of ASHRAE 62.2)

From ASHRAE 62.2,

5.1 Local Mechanical Exhaust. A local mechanical exhaust system shall be installed in each kitchen and bathroom. Nonenclosed kitchens shall be provided with a demand-controlled mechanical exhaust system meeting the requirements of Section 5.2. Each local ventilation system for all other kitchens and bathrooms shall be either one of the following two:

a. A demand-controlled mechanical exhaust system meeting the requirements of Section 5.2

b. A continuous mechanical exhaust system meeting the requirements of Section 5.3.

Exception: Alternative Ventilation. Other design methods may be used to provide the required exhaust rates when approved by a licensed design professional.

5.2 Demand-Controlled Mechanical Exhaust. A local mechanical exhaust system shall be designed to be operated as needed.

5.2.1 Control and Operation. Demand-controlled mechanical exhaust systems shall be provided with at least one of the following controls:

a. A readily accessible occupant-controlled on/off control.

b. An automatic control that does not impede occupant on control.

5.2.2 Ventilation Rate. The minimum airflow rating shall be at least the amount indicated in Table 5.1.

5.3 Continuous Mechanical Exhaust. A mechanical exhaust system shall be installed to operate continuously. The system may be part of a balanced mechanical system. See Chapter 10 of ASHRAE Guideline 24 for guidance on selection of methods.

5.3.1 Control and Operation. A readily accessible manual on/off control shall be provided for each continuous mechanical exhaust system. The system shall be designed to operate *during all occupiable hours.*

Exception: For multifamily dwelling units, the manual on/off control shall not be required to be readily accessible.

5.3.2 Ventilation Rate. The minimum delivered ventilation shall be at least the amount indicated in Table 5.2 during each hour of operation.

From ASHRAE 62.2 - Table 5-1 Demand-Controlled Local Ventilation Exhaust Airflow Rates

Application	Airflow
Enclosed Kitchen	• Vented range hood (including appliance-range hood combinations): 100 cfm (50 L/s) • Other kitchen exhaust fans, including downdraft: 300 cfm (150 L/s) or a capacity of 5 ach
Non-Enclosed Kitchen	• Vented range hood (including appliance-range hood combinations): 100 cfm (50 L/s) • Other kitchen exhaust fans, including downdraft: 300 cfm (150 L/s)
Bathroom	50 cfm (25 L/s)

From ASHRAE 62.2 - TABLE 5.2 Continuous Local Ventilation Exhaust Airflow Rates

Application	Airflow
Enclosed Kitchen	5 ach, based on kitchen volume
Bathroom	20 cfm (10 L/s)

Local exhaust (sometimes called *spot ventilation*) has long been required for bathrooms and kitchens to remove moisture and odors at their source. Building codes have required an operable window or an exhaust fan in bathrooms for many years and have generally required kitchen exhaust either directly through a fan or indirectly through a recirculating range hood and an operable window. The Energy Standards recognize the limitations of these indirect methods of reducing moisture and odors and <u>requires that these spaces be mechanically exhausted directly outdoors</u>, even if windows are present. Moisture condensation on indoor surfaces is a leading cause of mold and mildew in buildings. The occurrence of asthma is also associated with high interior relative humidity. Therefore, it is important to exhaust the excess moisture from bathing and cooking directly at the source.

The Energy Standards require that each kitchen and bathroom have an exhaust fan. Generally, this will be a dedicated exhaust fan in each room that requires local exhaust. Ventilation systems that exhaust air from multiple rooms using a duct system connected to a single exhaust fan are allowed as long as the minimum local exhaust requirement is met in all rooms served by the system. The standards define kitchens as any room containing cooking appliances. The definition of a bathroom is any room containing a bathtub, shower, spa, or other similar source of moisture. A room containing only a toilet is not required to have an exhaust fan; ASHRAE 62.2 assumes there is an adjacent bathroom with local exhaust.

Building codes may require that fans used for kitchen range hood exhaust ventilation be safety-rated by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL) or some other testing agency for the particular location and/or application. Typically, these requirements address fire safety issues of fans placed within an area defined by a set of lines at 45 degrees F outward and upward from the cooktop. Few bathroom exhaust fans will have this rating, so cannot be used in these locations.

Example 4-17: Local Exhaust Required for Toilet

Question

A home is being built with 2.5 baths. The half-bath consists of a room with a toilet and sink. Is local exhaust required for the half bath?

Answer

No. Local exhaust is required only for bathrooms, which are defined by the Energy Standards as rooms with a bathtub, shower, spa or some other similar source of moisture. This does not include a simple sink for occasional hand washing.

Example 4-18

Question

The master bath suite in a dwelling has a bathroom with a shower, spa and sinks. The toilet is in a separate, adjacent room with a full door. Where do I need to install local exhaust fans?

Answer

The standards require local exhaust only in the bathroom, not the separate toilet room.

4.3.2.7.1 Demand-Controlled (Intermittent) Local Exhaust

The Energy Standards require that local exhaust fans be designed to be operated by the occupant. This usually means that a wall switch or some other control is accessible and obvious. There is no requirement to specify where the control or switch needs to be located, but bathroom exhaust fan controls are generally located next to the light switch, and kitchen exhaust fan controls are generally integrated into the range hood, mounted on the wall or counter adjacent to the range hood.

Bathrooms can use a variety of exhaust strategies. They can use ceiling-mounted exhaust fans or may use a remotely mounted fan ducted to two or more exhaust grilles. Demand-controlled local exhaust can be integrated with the dwelling unit ventilation system to provide both functions. Kitchens can have range hood exhaust fans, down-draft exhausts, ceiling- or wall-mounted exhaust fans, or pickups for remote-mounted inline exhaust fans. Generally, HVR/ energy recovery ventilator manufacturers do not allow exhaust ducting from the kitchen, because of the heat, moisture, grease, and particulates that should not enter the heat exchange core. Building codes require kitchen exhaust fans to be connected to metal ductwork for fire safety.

Example 4-19: Ducting Kitchen Exhaust to the Outdoors

Question

How does one know what kind of duct to use? If a builder is familiar with recirculating hoods and now needs to vent to outdoors, what should he or she look for?

Answer

A kitchen range hood or downdraft duct is generally a smooth metal duct that is sized to match the outlet of the ventilation device. It is often a six-inch or seven-inch-round duct, or the range hood may have a rectangular discharge. If it is rectangular, the fan will typically have a rectangular-to-round adapter included. Always use a terminal device on the roof or wall that is sized to be at least as large as the duct. Try to minimize the number of elbows used.

Example 4-20

Question

What are the requirements in a specific area?

Answer

Ask a local code enforcement agency for that information. Some enforcement agencies will accept metal flex, some will not.

4.3.2.7.2 Control and Operation for Intermittent Local Exhaust

The choice of control is left to the designer. It can be a manual switch or automatic control, like an occupancy sensor. Some exhaust fans have multiple speeds, and some fan controls have a delay-off function that operates the exhaust fan for a set time after the occupant leaves the bathroom. New control strategies continue to come to the market. The only requirement is that there is a control. Title 24, Part 11 may specify additional requirements for the control and operation of intermittent local exhaust.

4.3.2.7.3 Ventilation Rate for Demand-Controlled Local Exhaust

A minimum exhaust airflow of 100 cfm is required for vented kitchen range hoods, and 300 cfm or 5 ACH is required for other kitchen exhaust fans. A minimum exhaust airflow of 50 cfm is required for bathroom fans.

The 100-cfm requirement for the range hood or microwave/hood combination is the minimum to adequately capture the moisture, particulates, and other products of cooking and/or combustion. In kitchens that are enclosed, the exhaust requirement can also be met with either a ceiling or wall-mounted exhaust fan or with a ducted fan or ducted ventilation system that can provide at least five air changes of the kitchen volume per hour. Recirculating range hoods that do not exhaust pollutants to the outside cannot be used to meet the requirements of ASHRAE Standard 62.2 unless paired with an exhaust system that can provide at least five air changes of the kitchen volume per hour.

The Energy Standards require verification that range hoods are HVI certified to provide at least one speed setting at which they can deliver at least 100 cfm at a noise level of 3 sones or less. Verification must be in accordance with the procedures in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2.2.4.1.3. Range hoods that have a minimum airflow setting exceeding 400 cfm are exempt from the noise requirement. HVI listings are available at:

https://www.hvi.org/proddirectory/CPD_Reports/section_1/index.cfm

ASHRAE Standard 62.2 limits exhaust airflow when atmospherically vented combustion appliances are located inside the pressure boundary. This is particularly important to observe when large range hoods are installed. Refer to the Residential Compliance Manual Section 4.6.8.4 for more information.

Example 4-20: Ceiling or Wall Exhaust vs Demand-Controlled Range Hood in an Enclosed Kitchen

Question

A dwelling has an enclosed kitchen that is 12 ft. by 14 ft. with a 10 ft. ceiling. What size ceiling exhaust fan or range hood fan is required?

Answer

If a range hood exhaust is not used, either 300 cfm or 5 ACH minimum airflow is required. The kitchen volume is 12 ft. x 14 ft. x 10 ft. = 1680 ft^3. Five air changes are a flow rate of 1680 ft^3 x 5/ hr ÷ 60 min/hr = 140 cfm. This kitchen must have a ceiling or wall exhaust fan of 140 cfm. Otherwise a vented range hood fan that provides at least 100 cfm is required.

4.3.2.7.4 Continuous Local Exhaust

The Energy Standards allow the designer to install a local exhaust system that operates without occupant intervention continuously and automatically during all occupiable hours. Continuous local exhaust may be specified for compliance when the local exhaust ventilation system is also used to comply with the airflow rate required for continuous dwelling unit ventilation, as long as the fan airflow meets both the local and dwelling unit airflow rates. Continuous local exhaust may also be part of a pickup for a remote fan or HRV/ energy recovery ventilator system.

Continuously operating bathroom fans must operate at a minimum of 20 cfm. Continuously operating kitchen fans are only permitted for enclosed kitchens. Refer to Tables 5.1 and 5.2 in ASHRAE 62.2 (shown also in section 4.3.2.7 above) for other local demand controlled and continuous exhaust requirements.

Example 4-21: Continuous Kitchen Exhaust

Question

A new dwelling has an open-design, 12 ft by 18 ft ranch kitchen with 12 ft cathedral ceilings. What airflow rate will be required for a continuous exhaust fan?

Answer

A continuous exhaust fan cannot be used in non-enclosed kitchens. A vented range hood must be provided.

4.3.2.8 Other Requirements (Section 6 of ASHRAE 62.2)

See section 4.6.8 in the Residential Compliance Manual for additional information about other requirements from Section 6 of ASHRAE 62.2 that are adopted by Title 24, Part 6.

4.3.3 Natural Ventilation

§120.1(c)2

The 2019 Energy Standards changed the way naturally ventilated spaces are calculated by adopting ASHRAE 62.1. Under these new requirements, naturally ventilated spaces or portions of spaces must be permanently open to and within certain distances of operable wall openings to the outdoors. The space being ventilated, the size of the operable opening and the control of the opening are all considered under these new requirements. Naturally ventilated spaces must also include a mechanical ventilation system that complies with §120.1(c)3 as described in Section 4.3.3., except when the opening to the outdoors is permanently open or has controls that prevent the opening from being closed during periods of expected occupancy. This requirement for mechanical ventilation back-up to a naturally ventilated space protects the occupants from times or events where the outdoor air is not adequate for ventilation and does not rely on an individual to open the opening.

The space to be naturally ventilated is determined based on the configuration of the walls (cross-ventilation, single-sided or adjacent walls) and the ceiling height. For spaces with an operable opening on only one side of the space, only the floor area within two times the ceiling height from the opening is permitted to be naturally ventilated. For spaces with operable openings on two opposite sides of the space, only the floor areas within five times the ceiling height from the openings are permitted to be naturally ventilated. For spaces with operable openings on two adjacent sides of the space (two sides of a corner), only the floor areas along lines connecting the two openings that are within five times the ceiling height meet the requirement. Floor areas not along these lines connecting the windows must meet the one side or two opposite side opening calculation to be permitted to be naturally ventilated. The ceiling height for all of these cases is the minimum ceiling height, except for when the ceiling is sloped upwards from the opening. In that case, the ceiling height is calculated as the average within 20 feet of the opening.

Spaces or portions of space being naturally ventilated must be permanently open to operable walls openings directly to the outdoors. The minimum openable area is required to be 4 percent of the net occupiable floor area being naturally ventilated. Where openings are covered with louvers or otherwise obstructed, the openable area must be based on the free unobstructed area through the opening. Where interior spaces without direct openings to the outdoors are ventilated through adjoining rooms, the opening between rooms must be permanently unobstructed and have a free area of not less than 8 percent of the area of the interior room nor less than 25 sq. ft.

The means to open required operable openings must be readily accessible to building occupants whenever the space is occupied. The operable opening must be monitored to coordinate the operation of the operable opening and the mechanical ventilation system. This is achieved through window contact switches or another type of relay switch that interlocks the operable opening with the mechanical ventilation system. [§140.4(n)]

4.3.4 Mechanical Ventilation

§120.1(c)3

Mechanical outdoor ventilation must be provided for all spaces normally occupied. The Energy Standards require that a mechanical ventilation system provide outdoor air equal to or exceeding the ventilation rates required for each of the spaces that it serves. At the space, the required ventilation can be provided either directly through supply air or indirectly through transfer of air from the plenum or an adjacent space (see 4.3.6 for updates to transfer air classification). The required minimum ventilation airflow at the space can be provided by an equal quantity of supply or transfer air. At the air-handling unit, the minimum outside air must be the sum of the ventilation requirements of each of the spaces that it serves. The designer may specify higher outside air ventilation rates based on the owner's preference or specific ventilation needs associated with the space. However, specifying more ventilation air than the minimum allowable ventilation rates increases energy consumption and electrical peak demand and increases the costs of operating the HVAC equipment. Thus, the designer should have a compelling reason to specify higher design minimum outside air rates than the calculated minimum outside air requirements.

The minimum outside air (OSA) as measured by acceptance testing, is required to be within 10 percent of the design minimum for both VAV and constant volume units. The design minimum outside air can be no less than the calculated minimum outside air

In summary:

1. Ventilation compliance at the space is satisfied by providing supply and/or transfer air.
2. Ventilation compliance at the air handling system level is satisfied by providing, at minimum, the outdoor air that represents the sum of the ventilation requirements of all the spaces that it serves.

For each space requiring mechanical ventilation the ventilation rates must be the greater of either:

1. The conditioned floor area of the space multiplied by the area outdoor air rate (R_a) from Table 4-12. This provides dilution for the building-borne contaminants like off-gassing of paints and carpets, or
2. For spaces designed for an expected number of occupants or spaces with fixed seating, the outdoor airflow rate to the zone must be 15 cfm per person, multiplied by the expected number of occupants. For spaces with fixed seating (such as a theater or auditorium), the expected number of occupants is the number of fixed seats or as determined by the California Building Code.

Table 4-12: Minimum Ventilation Rates

Occupancy Category	Area Outdoor cfm/ Air rate[1] R_a cfm/ ft[2]	Min Air Rate for DCV[2] cfm/ ft[2]	Air Class	Notes
Educational Facilities				
Daycare (through age 4)	0.21	0.15	2	
Daycare sickroom	0.15		3	
Classrooms (ages 5-8)	0.38	0.15	1	
Classrooms (age 9 -18)	0.38	0.15	1	
Lecture/postsecondary classroom	0.38	0.15	1	F
Lecture hall (fixed seats)	-	0.15	1	F
Art classroom	0.15		2	
Science laboratories	0.15		2	
University/college laboratories	0.15		2	
Wood/metal shop	0.15		2	
Computer lab	0.15		1	
Media center	0.15		1	A
Music/theater/dance	1.07	0.15	1	F
Multiuse assembly	0.50	0.15	1	F
Food and Beverage Service				
Restaurant dining rooms	0.50	0.15	2	
Cafeteria/fast-food dining	0.50	0.15	2	
Bars, cocktail lounges	0.50	0.20	2	
Kitchen (cooking)	0.15		2	
General				
Break rooms	0.50	0.15	1	F
Coffee stations	0.50	0.15	1	F
Conference/meeting	0.50	0.15	1	F
Corridors	0.15		1	F
Occupiable storage rooms for liquids or gels	0.15		2	B
Hotels, Motels, Resorts, Dormitories				
Bedroom/living room	0.15		1	F
Barracks sleeping areas	0.15		1	F
Laundry rooms, central	0.15		2	
Laundry rooms within dwelling units	0.15		1	

Lobbies/pre-function	0.50	0.15	1	F
Multipurpose assembly	0.50		1	F

Occupancy Category	Area Outdoor Air Rate[1] R_a cfm/ft^2	Min Air Rate for DCV[2] cfm/ft^2	Air Class	Notes
Office Buildings				
Breakrooms	0.50	0.15	1	
Main entry lobbies	0.50	0.15	1	F
Occupiable storage rooms for dry materials	0.15		1	
Office space	0.15		1	F
Reception areas	0.15		1	F
Telephone/data entry	0.15		1	F
Miscellaneous Spaces				
Bank vaults/safe deposit	0.15		2	F
Banks or bank lobbies	0.15		1	F
Computer (not printing)	0.15		1	F
Freezer and refrigerated spaces (<50°F)	-		2	E
General manufacturing (excludes heavy industrial and process using	0.15		3	
Pharmacy (prep. Area)	0.15		2	
Photo studios	0.15		1	
Shipping/receiving	0.15		2	B
Sorting, packing, light assembly	0.15		2	
Telephone closets	0.15		1	
Transportation waiting	0.50	0.15	1	F
Warehouses	0.15		2	B
All others	0.15		2	
Public Assembly Spaces				
Auditorium seating area	1.07	0.15	1	F
Places of religious worship	1.07	0.15	1	F
Courtrooms	0.19	0.15	1	F
Legislative chambers	0.19	0.15	1	F
Libraries (reading rooms and stack areas)	0.15		1	
Lobbies	0.50	0.15	1	F

Museums (children's)	0.25	0.15	1	
Museums/galleries	0.25	0.15	1	F

Occupancy Category	Area Outdoor Air Rate[1] R_a cfm/ft^2	Min Air Rate for DCV[2] cfm/ft^2	Air Class	Notes
Residential				
Common corridors	0.15		1	F
Retail				
Sales (except as below)	0.25	0.20	2	
Mall common areas	0.25	0.15	1	F
Barbershop	0.40		2	
Beauty and nail salons	0.40		2	
Pet shops (animal areas)	0.25	0.15	2	
Supermarket	0.25	0.20	1	F
Coin-operated laundries	0.30		2	
Sports and Entertainment				
Gym, sports arena (play area)	0.50	0.15	2	E
Spectator areas	0.50	0.15	1	F
Swimming (pool)	0.15		2	C
Swimming (deck)	0.50	0.15	2	C
Disco/dance floors	1.50	0.15	2	F
Health club/aerobics room	0.15		2	
Health club/weight rooms	0.15		2	
Bowling alley (seating)	1.07	0.15	1	
Gambling casinos	0.68	0.15	1	
Game arcades	0.68	0.15	1	
Stages, studios	0.50	0.15	1	D,

General notes:

1 Ra was determined as being the larger of the area method and the default per person method. The occupant density used in the per person method was assumed to be one half of the maximum occupant load assumed for egress purposes in the California Building Code.

2 If this column specifies a minimum cfm/ft^2 then it shall be used to comply with Section 120.1(d)4E.

Specific notes:

A – For high-school and college libraries, the values shown for "Public Assembly Spaces – Libraries" shall be used. B – Rate may not be sufficient where stored materials include those having potentially harmful emissions.

C – Rate does not allow for humidity control. "Deck area" refers to the area surrounding the pool that is capable of being wetted during pool use or when the pool is occupied. Deck area that is not expected to be wetted shall be designated as an occupancy category.
D – Rate does not include special exhaust for stage effects such as dry ice vapors and smoke.
E – Where combustion equipment is intended to be used on the playing surface or in the space, additional dilution ventilation, source control, or both shall be provided.

F – Ventilation air for this occupancy category shall be permitted to be reduced to zero when the space is in occupied-standby mode

Source: California Energy Commission, 2019 Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Table 120.1-A

As previously stated, each ventilation system must provide outdoor ventilation air as follows:

1. For a ventilation system serving a single space, the required system outdoor airflow is equal to the design outdoor ventilation rate of the space.
2. For a ventilation system serving multiple spaces, the required outdoor air quantity delivered by the system must not be less than the sum of the required outdoor ventilation rate to each space. The Energy Standards do not require that each space actually receive its exact calculated outdoor air quantity. Instead, the supply air to any given space may be any combination of recirculated air, outdoor air, or air transferred directly from other spaces, provided:
   a. The total amount of outdoor air delivered by the ventilation system(s) to all spaces is at least as large as the sum of the space design quantities.
   b. Each space always receives supply airflow, including recirculated air and/or transfer air, no less than the calculated outdoor ventilation rate.
   c. When using transfer air, none of the spaces from which air is transferred has any unusual sources of contaminants.

Example 4-9: Ventilation for a Two-Room Building

Question

Consider a building with two spaces, each having an area of 1,000 sq ft. One space is used for general administrative functions, and the other is used as a classroom. It is estimated that the office will contain seven people, and the classroom will contain 50 people (fixed seating). What are the required outdoor ventilation rates?

Answer

1. For the office area, the design outdoor ventilation air is the larger of:

   7 people x 15 cfm/person = 105 cfm; or

   1,000 ft² x 0.15 cfm/ft² = 150 cfm

   For this space, the design ventilation rate is 150 cfm.

2. For the classroom, the design outdoor ventilation air is the larger of:

   50 people x 15 cfm/person = 750 cfm; or

   1,000 ft² x 0.38 cfm/ft² = 380 cfm

   For this space the design ventilation rate is 750 cfm.

Assume the total supply air necessary to satisfy cooling loads is 1,000 cfm for the office and 1,500 cfm for the classroom. If each space is served by a separate system, then the required outdoor ventilation rate of each system is 150 cfm and 750 cfm, respectively. This corresponds to a 15 percent outside air fraction in the office HVAC unit, and 50 percent in the classroom unit.

If both spaces are served by a central system, then the total supply will be (1,000 + 1,500) cfm = 2500 cfm. The required outdoor ventilation rate is (150 + 750) = 900 cfm total. The actual outdoor air ventilation rate for each space is:

Office outside air = 900 cfm x (1,000 cfm / 2,500 cfm) = 360 cfm

Classroom outside air = 900 cfm x (1,500 cfm / 2,500 cfm) = 540 cfm

While this simplistic analysis suggests that the actual outside air cfm to the classroom is less than design (540 cfm vs. 750 cfm), the analysis does not take credit for the dilution effect of the air recirculated from the office. The office is over-ventilated (360 cfm vs. 150 cfm) so the concentration of pollutants in the office return air is low enough that it can be used, along with the 540 cfm of outdoor air, to dilute pollutants in the classroom. The Energy Standards allow this design provided that the system always delivers at least 750 cfm to the classroom (including transfer or recirculated air), and that any transfer air is free of unusual contaminants.

4.3.5 Exhaust Ventilation

§120.1(c)4

The exhaust ventilation requirements are new for the 2019 Energy Standards. They are aligned with ASHRAE 62.1 and requires certain occupancy categories to be exhausted to the outdoors, as listed in Table 4-12. Exhaust flow rates must meet or exceed the minimum rates specified in 4-13. The spaces listed are expected to have contaminants not generally found in adjacent occupied spaces. Therefore, the air supplied to the space to replace the air exhausted may be any combination of outdoor air, recirculated air, and transfer air – all of which are expected to have low or zero concentration of the pollutants generated in the listed spaces. For example, the exhaust from a toilet room can draw air from either the outdoors, adjacent spaces, or from a return air duct or plenum. Because these sources of makeup air have essentially zero concentration of toilet-room odors, they are equally good at diluting odors in the toilet room.

The rates specified must be provided during all periods when the space is expected to be occupied, similar to the requirement for ventilation air.

Table 4-13: Minimum Exhaust Rates

Occupancy Category	Exhaust Rate (cfm/unit)	Exhaust Rate (cfm/ft^2)	Air Class	Notes
Arenas	-	0.	1	B
Art classrooms	-	0.	2	
Auto repair rooms	-	1.	2	A
Barber shops	-	0.	2	
Beauty and nail salons	-	0.	2	
Cells with toilet	-	1.	2	
Copy, printing rooms	-	0.	2	
Darkrooms	-	1.	2	
Educational science laboratories	-	1.	2	
Janitor closets, trash rooms, recycling	-	1.	3	
Kitchenettes	-	0.	2	
Kitchens – commercial	-	0.	2	
Locker rooms for athletic or industrial facilities	-	0.	2	
All other locker rooms	-	0.	2	
Shower rooms	20/	-	2	G,
Paint spray booths	-	-	4	F
Parking garages	-	0.	2	C
Pet shops (animal areas)	-	0.	2	
Refrigerating machinery rooms	-	-	3	F
Soiled laundry storage rooms	-	1.	3	F
Storage rooms, chemical	-	1.	4	F
Toilets – private	25/	-	2	E
Toilets – public	50/	-	2	D
Woodwork shop/classrooms	-	0.	2	

Notes:
A – Stands where engines are run shall have exhaust systems that directly connect to the engine exhaust and prevent escape of fumes.
B – Where combustion equipment is intended to be used on the playing surface, additional dilution ventilation, source control, or both shall be provided.
C – Exhaust shall not be required where two or more sides comprise walls that are at least 50% open to the outside.
D – Rate is per water closet, urinal, or both. Provide the higher rate where periods of heavy use are expected to occur. The lower rate shall be permitted to be used otherwise.
E – Rate is for a toilet room intended to be occupied by one person at a time. For continuous systems operation during hours of use, the lower rate shall be permitted to be used. Otherwise the higher rate shall be used.
F – See other applicable standards for exhaust rate.
G – For continuous system operation, the lower rate shall be permitted to be used. Otherwise the higher rate shall be used. H – Rate is per showerhead.

Source: California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Table 120.1-B

4.3.6 Air Classification and Recirculation Limitations

§120.1(g)

New in the 2019 Energy Standards is the concept of air classification, a process that assigns an air class number based on the occupancy category then sets limits on transferring or recirculating that air. This offers designers clear guidance on what can and cannot be used for transfer, makeup or recirculation air. In previous Energy Standards transfer air was allowed as long as it did not have “unusual sources of indoor air contaminants,” which left the enforcement of this rule to be arbitrary. Now, all spaces listed in Table 4-12 are assigned an air class and specific direction is given for each class, which is in alignment with ASHRAE 62.1.

Class 1: This class consists of air with low contaminant concentration, low sensory-irritation intensity, and inoffensive odor, suitable for recirculation or transfer to any space. Some examples include classrooms, lecture halls, and lobbies.

Class 2: This class consists of air with moderate contaminant concentration, mild sensory-irritation intensity, or mildly offensive odors. Class 2 air is suitable for recirculation or transfer to any space with Class 2 or Class 3 air, and that is utilized for the same or similar purpose and involves the same or similar pollutant sources. Class 2 air may be transferred to toilet rooms and to any Class 4 air occupancies. Class 2 air is not suitable for recirculation or transfer to dissimilar spaces with Class 2 or Class 3 air. It is also not suitable in spaces with Class 1 air, unless the Class 1 space uses an energy recovery device, then recirculation from leakage carryover or transfer from the exhaust side is permitted. In this case the amount of Class 2 air allowed to be transferred or recirculated shall not exceed 10 percent of the outdoor air intake flow. Thus, HVAC systems serving spaces with Class 2 air shall not share the same air handler as spaces with Class 1 air. Some examples include warehouses, restaurants, and auto repair rooms.

Class 3: This class consists of air with significant contaminant concentration, significant sensory-irritation intensity, or offensive odor that is suitable for recirculation within the same space. Recirculation of Class 3 air is only permitted within the space of origin. It is not suitable for recirculation or transfer to any other spaces. However, when a space uses an energy recovery device, then recirculation from leakage carryover or transfer from the exhaust side of the energy recovery device is permitted. In this case the amount of Class 3 air allowed to be transferred or recirculated shall not exceed 5 percent of the outdoor air intake flow. HVAC systems serving spaces with Class 3 air shall not share the same air handler serving spaces with Class 1 or Class 2 air. Some examples include general manufacturing (excludes heavy industrial and processes using chemicals) and janitor closets.

Class 4: This class consist of air with highly objectionable fumes or gases, as well as potentially dangerous particles, bioaerosols, or gases at concentrations high enough to be considered harmful. Class 4 air is not suitable for recirculation or transfer within the space or to any other space. No leakage of Class 4 air from energy recovery devices is allowed. Some examples include spray paint booths and chemical storage rooms.

In addition to Tables 4-12 and 4-13, the Energy Standards also include air classifications for specific airstreams and sources as detailed in Table 4-14. In the event that Tables 4-12, 4-13 and 4-14 do not list the space or location, the air classification of the most similar space listed in terms of occupant activities or building construction shall be used.

Table 4-14: Airstreams or Sources

Description	Air Class
Diazo printing equipment discharge	4
Commercial kitchen grease hoods	4
Commercial kitchen hoods other than grease	3
Laboratory hoods	4[a]
Hydraulic elevator machine room	2

a. Air Class 4 unless determined otherwise by the Environmental Health and Safety professional responsible to the owner or to the owner's designee.

Source: California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Table 120.1-C

For ancillary spaces that are designated as Class 1 air but support a Class 2 air space, re-designation of Class 1 air to Class 2 air for ancillary spaces to Class 2 areas is allowed. For example, a bank lobby is designated as Class 1 while bank vaults or safety deposit areas are designated at Class 2. The ancillary space to the bank safety deposit area can be re-designated to Class 2 from Class 1.

4.3.7 Direct Air Transfer

The Energy Standards allow air to be directly transferred from one space to another to meet part of the ventilation supply, provided the total outdoor quantity required by all spaces served by the building's ventilation system is supplied by the mechanical systems. This method can be used for any space, but is particularly applicable to conference rooms, toilet rooms, and other rooms that have high ventilation requirements. Transfer air may be a mixture of air from multiple spaces or locations, in which case the air mixture must be classified at the mixed highest classification. Transfer air must meet the requirements of air classification and recirculation limitations, as described above.

Air may be transferred using any method that ensures a positive airflow. Examples include dedicated transfer fans, exhaust fans, and fan powered VAV boxes. A system having a ducted return may be balanced so that air naturally transfers into the space. Exhaust fans serving the space may discharge directly outdoors, or into a return plenum. Transfer systems should be designed to minimize recirculation of transfer air back into the space; duct work should be arranged to separate the transfer air intake and return points.

When each space in a two-space building is served by a separate constant volume system, the calculation and application of ventilation rate is straightforward, and each space will always receive its design outdoor air quantity. However, a central system serving both spaces does not deliver the design outdoor air quantity to each space. Instead, one space receives more than its allotted share, and the other less. This is because some spaces have a higher design outdoor ventilation rate and/or a lower cooling load relative to the other space.

4.3.8 Distribution of Outdoor Air to Zonal Units

§120.1(e)

When a return plenum is used to distribute outside air to a zonal heating or cooling unit, the outside air supply must be connected either:

1. Within 5 ft. of the unit; or
2. Within 15 ft. of the unit, with the air directed substantially toward the unit, and with a discharge velocity of at least 500 ft per minute.

Water source heat pumps and fan coils are the most common application of this configuration. The unit fans should be controlled to run continuously during occupancy in order for the ventilation air to be circulated to the occupied space.

Not all spaces are required to have a direct source of outdoor air. Transfer air is allowed from adjacent spaces with direct outdoor air supply if the system supplying the outdoor air is capable of supplying the required outdoor air to all spaces at the same time. Air classification and recirculation limitations will apply, as explained above. An example of an appropriate use of transfer would be in buildings having central interior space-conditioning systems with outdoor air supply, and zonal units on the perimeter without a direct outdoor air supply.

4.3.9 Ventilation System Operation and Controls

§120.1(d)

4.3.9.1 Outdoor Ventilation Air and VAV Systems

Except for systems employing Energy Commission-certified DCV devices or space occupancy sensors, the Energy Standards require that the minimum rate of outdoor air calculated per §120.1(c)3 be provided to each space *at all times,* when the space is normally occupied according to §120.1(d)1. For spaces served by VAV systems, the minimum supply setting of each VAV box should be no less than the design outdoor ventilation rate calculated for the space, unless transfer air is used. If transfer air is used, the minimum box position, plus the transfer air, must meet the minimum ventilation rate.

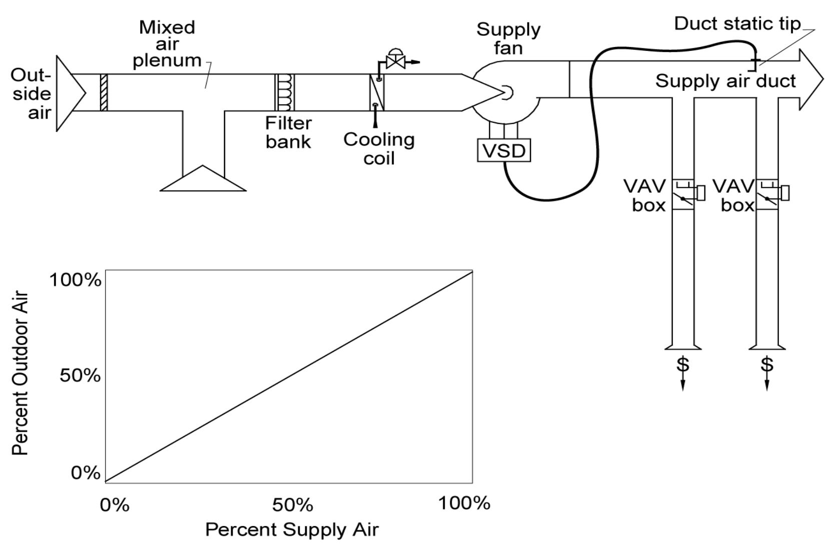
The design outdoor ventilation rate at the system level must always be maintained when the space is occupied, even when the fan has modulated to its minimum capacity §120.1(d)1. Section 4.3.13 describes mandated acceptance test requirements for outside air ventilation in VAV air handling systems where the minimum outside air will be measured at full flow with all boxes at minimum position.

Figure 4-5 shows a typical VAV system. In standard practice, the testing and balancing contractor sets the minimum position setting for the outdoor air damper during construction. It is set under the conditions of design airflow for the system and remains in the same position throughout the full range of system operation, which does not meet code. As the system airflow drops, so will the pressure in the mixed air plenum. A fixed position on the minimum outdoor air damper will produce a varying outdoor airflow. Figure 4-5 shows this effect will be approximately linear (in other words, outdoor air airflow will drop directly in proportion to the supply airflow).

The following paragraphs present several methods used to dynamically control the minimum outdoor air in VAV systems.

Care should be taken to reduce the amount of outdoor air provided when the system is operating during the weekend or after hours with only a fraction of the zones active. Section 120.2(g) requires provision of “isolation zones” of 25,000 sq. ft. or less, which can be accomplished by having the VAV boxes return to fully closed when their associated zone is in unoccupied mode. When a space or group of spaces is returned to occupied mode (e.g. through off-hour scheduling or a janitor’s override), only the boxes serving those zones need to be active. During this period when not all the zones are occupied, the ventilation air can be reduced to the required ventilation air of just those zones that are active. If all zones are of the same occupancy type (e.g. private offices), simply assign a floor area to each isolation zone and prorate the minimum ventilation area by the ratio of the sum of the floor areas presently active divided by the sum of all the floor areas served by the HVAC system.

Figure 4-5: VAV Reheat System with a Fixed Minimum Outdoor Air Damper Set Point



A. **Fixed Minimum Damper Set Point**

This method does not comply with the Energy Standards. The airflow at a fixed minimum damper position will vary with the pressure in the mixed air plenum. It is explicitly prohibited in §120.1(f)2.

B. **Dual Minimum Set Point Design**

This method complies with the Energy Standards. An inexpensive enhancement to the fixed damper set point design is the dual minimum set point design, commonly used on some packaged AC units. The minimum damper position is set proportionally based on fan speed or airflow between a set point determined when the fan is at full speed (or airflow) and minimum speed (or airflow). This method complies with the Energy Standards but is not accurate over the entire range of airflow rates or when wind or stack effect pressure fluctuates. With DDC, this design has a relatively low cost.

C. **Energy Balance Method**

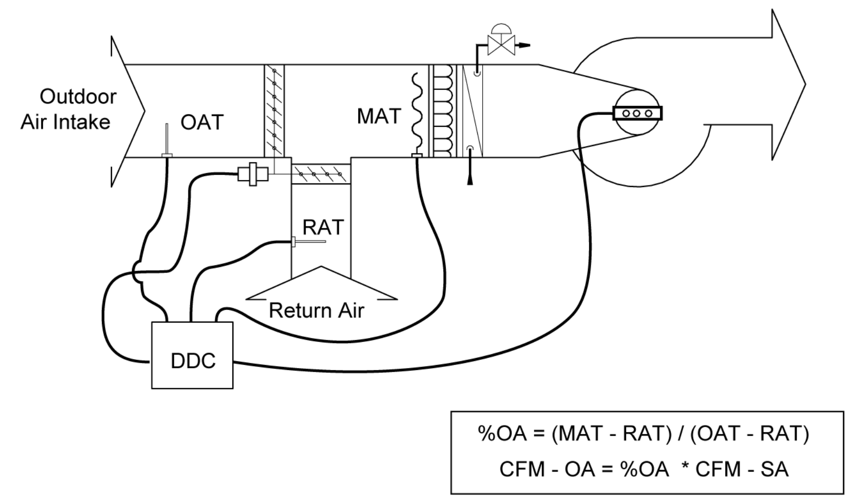
The energy balance method uses temperature sensors located outside, as well as in the return and mixed air plenums to determine the percentage of outdoor air in the supply air stream. The outdoor airflow is then calculated using the equations shown in Figure 4-6. This method requires an airflow monitoring station on the supply fan.

While technically feasible, it may be difficult to meet the outside air acceptance requirements with this approach because:

1. It is difficult to accurately measure the mixed air temperature, which is critical to the success of this strategy. Even with an averaging type bulb, most mixing plenums have some stratification or horizontal separation between the outside and mixed airstreams.[1]
2. Even with the best installation, high accuracy sensors, and field calibration of the sensors, the equation for percent outdoor air will become inaccurate as the return air temperature approaches the outdoor air temperature. When they are equal, this equation predicts an infinite percentage of outdoor air.
3. The airflow monitoring station is likely to be inaccurate at low supply airflows.
4. The denominator of the calculation amplifies sensor inaccuracy as the return air temperature approaches the outdoor air temperature.

[1] This was the subject of ASHRAE Research Project 1045-RP, "Verifying Mixed Air Damper Temperature and Air Mixing Characteristics." Unless the return is over the outdoor air there are significant problems with stratification or airstream separation in mixing plenums.

Figure 4-6: Energy Balance Method of Controlling Minimum Outdoor Air



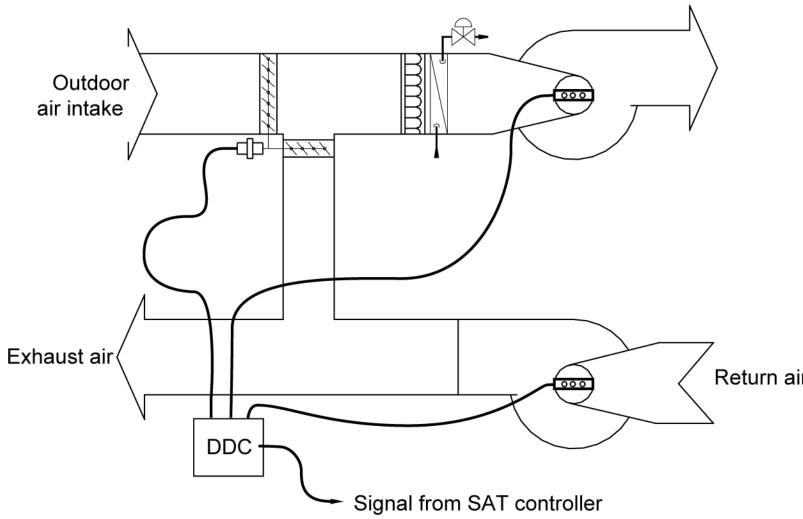
D. **Return Fan Tracking**

This method is also technically feasible but will likely not meet the acceptance requirements because the cumulative error of the two airflow measurements can be large, particularly at low supply/return airflow rates. It only works theoretically when the minimum outdoor air rate equals the rate of air required to maintain building pressurization (the difference between supply air and return air rates). Return fan tracking (Figure 4-7) uses airflow monitoring stations on both the supply and return fans. The theory behind this is that the difference between the supply and return fans should be made up by outdoor air and controlling the flow of return air forces more ventilation into the building. Several problems occur with this method:

1. The relative accuracy of airflow monitoring stations is poor, particularly at low airflows;
2. The high cost of airflow monitoring stations;
3. Building pressurization problems unless the ventilation air is equal to the desired building exfiltration plus the building exhaust

ASHRAE research has also demonstrated that in some cases this arrangement can cause outdoor air to be drawn into the system through the exhaust dampers due to negative pressures at the return fan discharge.

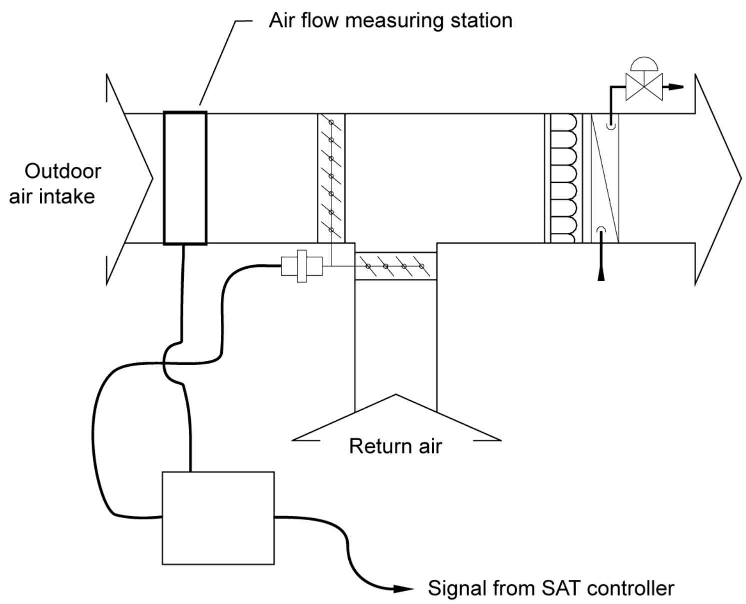
Figure 4-7: Return Fan Tracking



E. Airflow Measurement of the Entire Outdoor Air Inlet

This method is technically feasible but will likely not meet the acceptance requirements, depending on the airflow measurement technology. Most airflow sensors will not be accurate within a 5 to 15 percent turndown (the normal commercial ventilation range). Controlling the outdoor air damper by direct measurement with an airflow monitoring station (Figure 4-8) can be an unreliable method. Its success relies on the turndown accuracy of the airflow monitoring station. Depending on the loads in a building, the ventilation airflow can be between 5 and 15 percent of the design airflow. If the outdoor airflow sensor is sized for the design flow for the airside economizer, this method has to have an airflow monitoring station that can turn down to the minimum ventilation flow (between 5 and 15 percent). Of the different types available, only a hot-wire anemometer array is likely to have this low-flow accuracy while traditional pitot arrays will not. One advantage of this approach is that it provides outdoor airflow readings under all operating conditions, not just when on minimum outdoor air. For highest accuracy, provide a damper and outdoor air sensor for the minimum ventilation air that is separate from the economizer outdoor air intake.

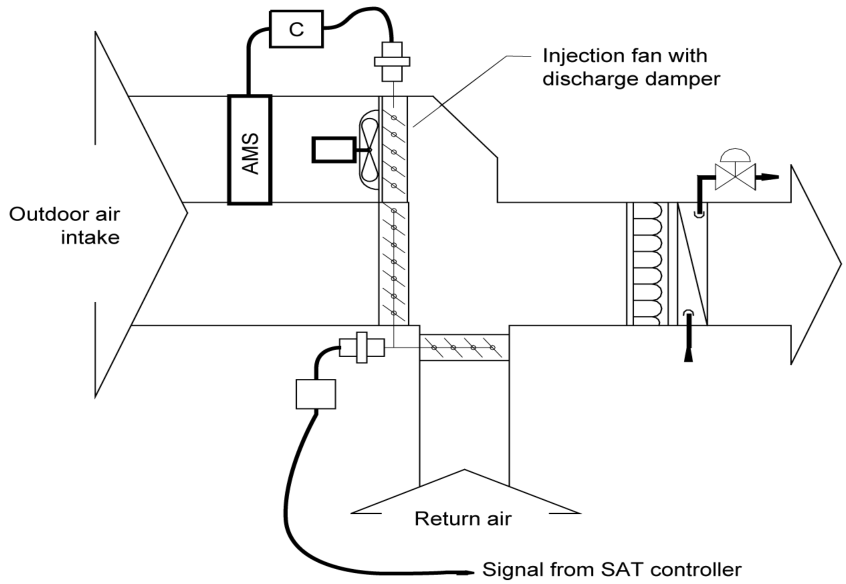
Figure 4-8: Airflow Measurement of 100 Percent Outdoor Air



F. Injection Fan Method

This method complies with the Energy Standards, but it is expensive and may require additional space. An airflow sensor and damper are required since fan airflow rate will vary, as mixed air plenum pressure varies. The injection fan method (Figure 4-9) uses a separate outdoor air inlet and fan sized for the minimum ventilation airflow. This inlet contains an airflow monitoring station, and a fan with capacity control (e.g., discharge damper; variable frequency drives [VFD]), which is modulated as required to achieve the desired ventilation rate. The discharge damper is required to shut off the intake when the air handling unit (AHU) is off, and also to prevent excess outdoor air intake when the mixed air plenum is significantly negative under peak conditions. The fan is operating against a negative differential pressure and thus cannot stop flow just by slowing or stopping the fan. Though effective, the cost of this method is high and often requires additional space for the injection fan assembly.

Figure 4-9: Injection Fan with Dedicated Minimum Outdoor Air Damper



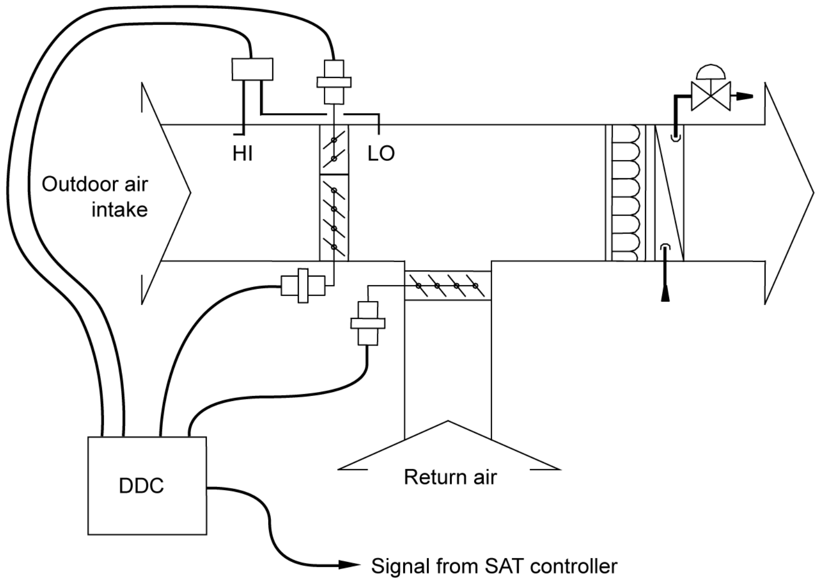
G. Dedicated Minimum Ventilation Damper with Pressure Control

This approach is low cost and takes little space. It can be accurate if the differential set point corresponding to the minimum outdoor air rate is properly set in the field. An inexpensive but effective design uses a minimum ventilation damper with differential pressure control (Figure 4-10). In this method, the economizer damper is broken into two pieces: a small two position damper controlled for minimum ventilation air and a larger, modulating, maximum outdoor air damper that is used in economizer mode. A differential pressure transducer is placed across the minimum outdoor air damper. During start-up, the air balancer opens the minimum outside air (OA) damper and return air damper, closes the economizer OA damper, runs the supply fan at design airflow, measures the OA airflow and adjusts the minimum OA damper position until the OA airflow equals the design minimum OA airflow. The linkages on the minimum OA damper are then adjusted so that the current position is the “full open” actuator position. At this point the design pressure (DP) across the minimum OA damper is measured. This value becomes the DP set point. The principle used here is that airflow is constant across a fixed orifice (the open damper) at fixed DP.

As the supply fan modulates when the economizer is off, the return air damper is controlled to maintain the DP setpoint across the minimum ventilation damper.

The main downside of this method is the complexity of controls and the potential problems determining the DP setpoint in the field. It is often difficult to measure the outdoor air rate due to turbulence and space constraints.

Figure 4-10: Minimum Outdoor Air Damper with Pressure Control



Example 4-10: Minimum VAV cfm

Question

If the minimum required ventilation rate for a space is 150 cfm, what is the minimum allowed airflow for its VAV box when the percentage of outdoor air in the supply air is 20 percent?

Answer

The minimum allowed airflow may be as low as 150 cfm provided that enough outdoor air is supplied to all spaces combined to meet the requirements of §120.1(b)2 for each space individually.

4.3.10 Pre-Occupancy Purge

§120.1(d)2

Since many indoor air pollutants are out gassed from the building materials and furnishings, the Energy Standards require that buildings having a scheduled operation be purged before occupancy per §120.1(d)2. Immediately prior to occupancy, outdoor ventilation must be provided in an amount equal to the lesser of:

1. The minimum required ventilation rate for 1 hour
2. Three complete air changes

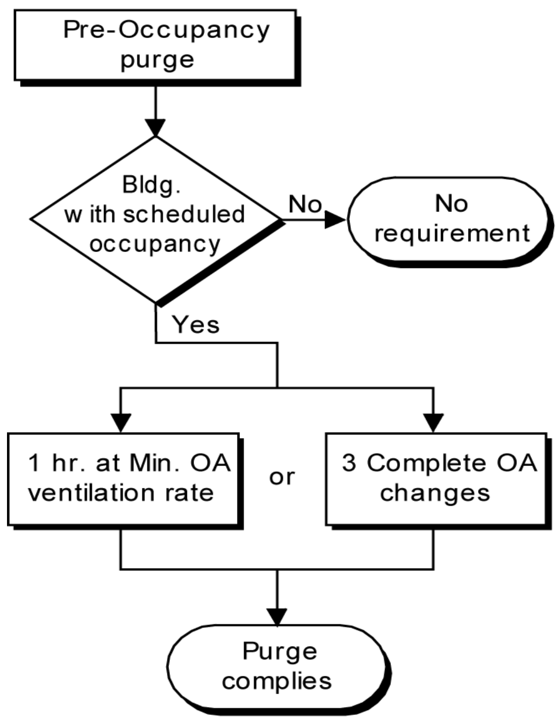
Either criterion can be used to comply with the Energy Standards. Three complete air changes means an amount of ventilation air equal to three times the volume of the occupied space. This air may be introduced at any rate provided for and allowed by the system, so that the actual purge period may be less than an hour.

A pre-occupancy purge is not required for buildings or spaces that are not occupied on a scheduled basis, such as storage rooms. Also, a purge is not required for spaces provided with natural ventilation.

Where pre-occupancy purge is required, it does not have to be coincident with morning warm-up (or cool-down). The simplest way to integrate the two controls is to schedule the system to be occupied one hour prior to the actual time of anticipated occupancy. This allows the optimal start, warm-up or pull-down routines to bring the spaces up to (or down to) desired temperatures before opening the outdoor air damper for ventilation. This will reduce the required system heating capacity and ensure that the spaces will be at the desired temperatures and fully purged at the start of occupancy.

However, for spaces with occupancy controls which turn ventilation off when occupancy is not sensed, care must be taken in specifying controls and control sequences that the lack of sensed occupancy does not disable or override ventilation during the pre-occupancy purge period.

Figure 4-11: Pre-Occupancy Purge Flowchart



Example 4-11: Purge Period

Question

What is the length of time required to purge a space 10 ft high with an outdoor ventilation rate of 1.5 cfm/sq ft?

Answer

For three air changes, each sq ft of space must be provided with:

OA volume = 3 x 10 = 30 cf/ft²

At a rate of 1.5 cfm/sq ft, the time required is:

Time = 30 cf/ft² / 1.5 cfm/ft² = 20 minutes

Example 4-12: Purge with Natural Ventilation

Question

In a building with natural ventilation, do the windows need to be left open all night to accomplish a building purge?

Answer

No. A building purge is required only for buildings with mechanical ventilation systems.

Example 4-13: Purge with Occupancy Timer

Question

How is a purge accomplished in a building without a regularly scheduled occupancy, whose system operation is controlled by an occupancy sensor?

Answer

This building is most likely 24/7 accessible and a purge requirement would not apply for this building. The occupancy sensors and manual timers can only be used to control ventilation systems in buildings that are intermittently occupied without a predictable schedule.

4.3.11 Demand Controlled Ventilation

§120.1(d)3 and 4

Demand controlled ventilation systems reduce the amount of ventilation supply air in response to a measured level of carbon dioxide (CO_2) in the breathing zone. The Energy Standards only permit CO_2 sensors for the purpose of meeting this requirement; volatile organic compounds (VOC) and so-called “indoor air quality(IAQ)” sensors are not approved as alternative devices to meet this requirement. The Energy Standards only permit DCV systems to vary the ventilation component that corresponds to occupant bioeffluents (this is the basis for the 15 cfm/person portion of the ventilation requirement). The purpose of CO_2 sensors is to track occupancy in a space; however, there are many factors that must be considered when designing a DCV system. There is often a lag time in the detection of occupancy through the build-up of CO_2. This lag time may be increased by any factors that affect mixing, such as short circuiting of supply air or inadequate air circulation, as well as sensor placement and sensor accuracy. Build-up of odors, bioeffluents, and other health concerns may also delay changes in occupancy. Therefore, the designers must be careful to specify CO_2 based DCV systems that are designed to provide adequate ventilation to the space by ensuring proper mixing, avoiding short circuiting, and proper placement and calibration of the sensors.

A. The Energy Standards require the use of DCV systems for spaces. Those that have a design occupancy of 40 sq. ft./person or smaller (for areas without fixed seating where the design density for egress purposes is 40 sq. ft./person or smaller), and has at least one of the following:

1. An air economizer
2. Modulating outside air control
3. Design outdoor airflow rate greater than 3,000 cfm

B. Exceptions to this requirement:

1. The space exhaust is greater than the required ventilation rate minus 0.2 cfm/ft².

   This relates to the fact that spaces with high exhaust requirements won't be able to provide sufficient turndown to justify the cost of the DCV controls. An example of this is a restaurant seating area where the seating area air is used as make-up air for the kitchen hood exhaust.

2. DCV devices are not allowed in spaces that have processes or operations that generate dusts, fumes, mists, vapors, or gases and are not provided with local exhaust ventilation, such as indoor operation of internal combustion engines, areas designated for unvented food service preparation, daycare, sickroom, science lab, barber shop, or beauty and nail salons.

   This exception recognizes that some spaces may need additional ventilation due to contaminants that are not occupant borne. It addresses spaces like theater stages where theatrical fog may be used or movie theater lobbies where unvented popcorn machines may be emitting odors and vapors into the space in either case justifying the need for higher ventilation rates. DCV devices shall not be installed in spaces included in this exception.

3. Spaces with an area of less than 150 sq. ft., or a design occupancy of less than 10 people, per §120.1(c)3 (Table 4-12 above).

   This recognizes the fact that DCV devices may not be cost effective in small spaces such as a 15 ft. by 10 ft. conference room or spaces with only a few occupants at design conditions.

Although not required, the Energy Standards permit design professionals to apply DCV on any intermittently occupied spaces served by either single-zone or multiple-zone equipment. §120.1(c)3 requires a minimum of 15 cfm of outdoor air per person multiplied by the expected number of occupants. However, it must be noted that these are minimum ventilation levels and the designers may specify higher ventilation levels if there are health related concerns that warrant higher ventilation rates.

CO_2 based DCV is based on several studies (Berg-Munch et al. 1986, Cain et al. 1983, Fanger 1983 and 1988, Iwashita et al. 1990, Rasmussen et al. 1985) which concluded that about 15 cfm of outdoor air ventilation per person will control human body odor such that roughly 80 percent of unadapted persons (visitors) will find the odor to be at an acceptable level. As activity level increases and bioeffluents increase, the rate of outdoor air required to provide acceptable air quality increases proportionally, resulting in the same differential CO2 concentration.

A CO_2 sensor only tracks indoor contaminants that are generated by occupants themselves and, to a lesser extent, their activities. It will not track other pollutants, particularly volatile organic compounds that off-gas from furnishings and building materials. Hence, where permitted or required by the Energy Standards, DCV systems cannot reduce the outdoor air ventilation rate below the lowest rate listed in Table 4-12 (typically 0.15 cfm/ft²) during normally occupied times.

DCV systems save energy if the occupancy varies significantly over time. Hence, they are most cost effective when applied to densely occupied spaces like auditoriums, conference rooms, lounges or theaters. Because DCV systems must maintain the lowest ventilation rate listed in Table 4-12, they will not be applicable to sparsely occupied buildings such as offices where the floor rate always exceeds the minimum rate required by the occupants (See Table 4-12).

C. Where DCV is employed (whether mandated or not) the controls must meet all of the following requirements:

1. Sensors must be provided in each room served by the system that has a design occupancy of 40 sq. ft. per person or less, with no less than one sensor per 10,000 sq. ft. of floor space. When a zone or a space is served by more than one sensor, signals from any sensor indicating that CO_2 is near or at the set point within a space, must trigger an increase in ventilation to the space. This requirement ensures that the space is adequately ventilated in case a sensor malfunctions. Design professionals should ensure that sensors are placed throughout a large space, so that all areas are monitored by a sensor.
2. The CO_2 sensors must be located in the breathing zone (between three and six ft. above the floor or at the anticipated height of the occupant's head). Sensors in return air ducts are not allowed since they can result in under-ventilation due to CO_2 measurement error caused by short-circuiting of supply air into return grilles and leakage of outdoor air (or return air from other spaces) into return air ducts.
3. The ventilation must be maintained that will result in a concentration of CO_2 at or below 600 ppm above the ambient level. The ambient levels can either be assumed to be 400 ppm or dynamically measured by a sensor that is installed within four feet of the outdoor air intake. At 400 ppm outside CO_2 concentration, the resulting DCV CO_2 set point would be 1000 ppm. (A 600-ppm differential is less than the 700 ppm that corresponds to the 15 cfm/person ventilation rate. This provides a margin of safety against sensor error, and because 1000 ppm CO_2 is a commonly recognized guideline value and referenced in earlier versions of ASHRAE Standard 62.)
4. Regardless of the CO_2 sensor's reading, the system is not required to provide more than the minimum ventilation rate required by §120.1(c)3. This prevents a faulty sensor reading from causing a system to provide more than the code required ventilation for system without DCV control. This high limit can be implemented in the controls.
5. The system shall always provide a minimum ventilation of the sum of the minimum air rate for DCV for all rooms with DCV and the minimum air rate

for all other spaces served by the system, as listed in Table 4-12. This is a low limit setting that must be implemented in the controls.

6. The CO_2 sensors must be factory-certified to have an accuracy within plus or minus 75 ppm at 600 and 1000 ppm concentration when measured at sea level and 25 degree Celsius (77 degrees F), factory calibrated or calibrated at start-up, and certified by the manufacturer to require calibration no more frequently than once every five years. A number of manufacturers now have self-calibrating sensors that either adjust to ambient levels during unoccupied times or adjust to the decrease in sensor bulb output through use of dual sources or dual sensors. For all systems, sensor manufacturers must provide a document to installers that their sensors meet these requirements. The installer must make this certification information available to the builder, building inspectors and, if specific sensors are specified on the plans, to plan checkers.
7. When a sensor failure is detected, the system must provide a signal to reset the system to provide the minimum quantity of outside air levels required by §120.1(c)3 to the zone(s) serviced by the sensor at all times that the zone is occupied. This requirement ensures that the space is adequately ventilated in case a sensor malfunctions. A sensor that provides a high CO_2 signal on sensor failure will comply with this requirement.
8. For systems that are equipped with DDC to the zone level, the CO_2 sensor(s) reading for each zone must be displayed continuously and recorded. The EMCS may be used to display and record the sensors' readings. The display(s) must be readily available to maintenance staff so they can monitor the systems performance.

4.3.12 Occupant Sensor Ventilation Control Devices

§120.1(d)5

The use of occupant sensor ventilation control devices is mandated for spaces that are also required to have lighting shut-off controls per §130.1(c), such as offices 250 sq. ft. or less, multipurpose rooms 1,000 sq. ft. or less, classrooms, conference rooms, and restrooms, and where the space ventilation is allowed to be reduced to zero in Table 120.1-A (see note F in the right-hand column of the table).

Where occupant sensor ventilation control devices are employed (whether mandated or not) the controls must meet all of the following requirements:

1. Sensors must meet the requirements of §110.9(b)4 and shall have suitable coverage to detect occupants in the entire space.
2. Sensors that are used for lighting can be used for ventilation if the ventilation system is controlled directly from the occupant sensor and is not subject to daylighting control or other manual overrides.
3. If a terminal unit serves several enclosed spaces, each space shall have its own occupant sensor and all sensors must indicate lack of occupancy before the zone airflow is cut off.

4. The occupant sensor override shall be disabled during preoccupancy purge (i.e. the terminal unit and central ventilation shall be active regardless of occupant status).

4.3.13 Fan Cycling

§120.1(d)1

While §120.1(d)1 requires that ventilation be continuous during normally occupied hours when the space is usually occupied, Exception 2 allows the ventilation to be disrupted for not more than 30 minutes at a time. In this case the ventilation rate during the time the system is ventilating must be increased so the average rate over the hour is equal to the required rate.

It is important to review any related ventilation and fan cycling requirements in Title 8, which is the Division of Occupational Safety and Health (Cal/OSHA) regulations. Section 5142 specifies the operational requirements related to HVAC minimum ventilation. It states:

Operation:

1. The HVAC system shall be maintained and operated to provide at least the quantity of outdoor air required by the State Building Standards Code, Title 24, Part 2, California Administrative Code, in effect at the time the building permit was issued.
2. The HVAC system shall be operated continuously during working hours except:
    a. During scheduled maintenance and emergency repairs;
    b. During periods not exceeding a total of 90 hours per calendar year when a serving electric utility by contractual arrangement requests its customers to decrease electrical power demand; or
    c. During periods for which the employer can demonstrate that the quantity of outdoor air supplied by nonmechanical means meets the outdoor air supply rate. The employer must have available a record of calculations and/or measurements substantiating that the required outdoor air supply rate is satisfied by infiltration and/or by a nonmechanically driven outdoor air supply system.
    d. When a space has entered Occupied Standby Mode as permitted by §120.2(e)3.

Title 8 Section 5142(a)(1) refers to Title 24, Part 2 (the California Building Code) for the minimum ventilation requirements. Section 1203 in the California Building Code specifies the ventilation requirements, but simply refers to the California Mechanical Code, which is Title 24, Part 4.

Chapter 4 in the California Mechanical Code specifies the ventilation requirements. Section 402.3 states, “The system shall operate so that all rooms and spaces are continuously provided with the required ventilation rate while occupied.” Section 403.5.1 states, “Ventilation systems shall be designed to be capable of providing the required ventilation rates in the breathing zone whenever the zones served by the system are occupied, including all full and part-load conditions.” The required ventilation rates are thus not required whenever the zones are unoccupied. This section affirms that ventilation fans may be turned off during unoccupied periods. In addition, Section 403.6 states, “The system shall be permitted to be designed to vary the design outdoor air intake flow or the space or zone airflow as operating conditions change.” This provides further validation to fan cycling as operating conditions change between occupied and unoccupied. A vacant zone has no workers present and is thus not subject to working hour’s requirements until the zone is actually occupied by a worker. Finally, Title 24, Part 4, states; “Ventilation air supply requirements for occupancies regulated by the California Energy Commission are found in the California Energy Code.” Thus, it refers to Title 24, Part 6 as the authority on ventilation.

Title 8 Section 5142(a)(2) states, “The HVAC system shall be operated continuously during working hours.” This regulation does not indicate that the airflow, cooling, or heating needs to be continuous. If the HVAC system is designed to maintain average ventilation with a fan cycling algorithm and is active in that mode providing average ventilation air as required during working hours, it is considered to be operating continuously per its mode and sequence. During unoccupied periods, the HVAC system is turned off except for setback and it no longer operates continuously. During the occupied period, occupant sensors or CO_2 sensors in the space provide continuous monitoring and the sequence is operating, cycling the fan and dampers as needed to maintain the ventilation during the occupied period. The HVAC system is operating with the purpose of providing ventilation, heating, and cooling continuously during the working hours. The heater, air conditioner, fans, and dampers all cycle on and off subject to their system controls to meet the requirements during the working hours.

Exceptions A, B, and C to Title 8 Section 5142(a)(2) all refer to a complete system shutdown where the required ventilation is not maintained.

Example 4-14

Question

Does a single zone air-handling unit serving a 2,000 sq. ft. auditorium with fixed seating for 240 people require DCV?

Answer

Since the space has an occupant load factor of 8.3 sq. ft. per person (2,000 sq. ft. per 240 people), it meets the 40 sq. ft./person or less requirement triggering demand control ventilation if it has at least one of the following:

-Air economizer
-Modulating outside air control -Design outdoor airflow greater than 3,000 cfm

A single CO_2 sensor could be used for this space provided it is certified by the manufacturer to cover 2,000 sq. ft. of space. The sensor must be placed directly in the space.

Example 4-15

Question

If two separate units are used to condition the auditorium in the previous example, is DCV required?

Answer

Yes, for each system that meets the criteria above.

Example 4-16

Question

Does the 2,000 sq ft auditorium in the previous examples require both DCV per Section 4.3.9. and occupant sensor ventilation control devices per Section 4.3.10?

Answer

No, only DCV is required because occupant sensor ventilation control devices are only required for spaces such as offices 250 sq ft or less, multipurpose rooms 1,000 sq ft or less, classrooms, conference rooms, or restrooms.

Example 4-17

Question

If a central AHU supplies five zones of office space (with a design occupant density of 100 sq ft per person and two zones with conference rooms (with a design occupant density of 35 sq ft per person) is it required to have demand-controlled ventilation and if so, on which zones?

Answer

If the AHU has DDC controls to the zone and an airside economizer it is required to have DCV controls in both of the conference room zones.

The minimum OSA will be set for 0.15 cfm/ft² times the total area of all seven zones (the office and conference room zones) and the maximum required OSA does not need to exceed the sum of 0.15 cfm/ft² for the five office zones plus 15 cfm per person for the two conference rooms.

4.3.13.1 Variable Air Volume (VAV) Changeover Systems

Some VAV systems provide conditioned supply air, either heated or cooled, through a single set of ducting. These systems are called VAV changeover systems or, perhaps more commonly, variable volume and temperature (VVT™) systems, named after a control system, distributed by Carrier Corp. In the event that heating is needed in some spaces at the same time that cooling is needed in others, the system must alternate between supplying heated and cooled air. When the supply air is heated, for example, the spaces requiring cooling are isolated (cut off) by the VAV dampers and must wait until the system switches back to cooling mode. In the meantime, they are generally not supplied with ventilation air.

Systems of this type may not meet the ventilation requirements if improperly applied. Where changeover systems span multiple orientations, the designer must make control provisions to ensure that no zone is shut off for more than 30 minutes at a time and that ventilation rates are increased during the remaining time to compensate. Alternatively, minimum damper position or airflow set points can be set for each zone to maintain supply air rates, but this can result in temperature control problems since warm air will be supplied to spaces that require cooling, and vice versa. Changeover systems that are applied to a common building orientation (e.g., all east or all interior) are generally the most successful since zones will usually have similar loads, allowing minimum airflow rates to be maintained without causing temperature control problems.

4.3.14 Adjustment of Ventilation Rate

Section 120.1(c) specifies the minimum required outdoor ventilation rate but does not restrict the maximum. However, if the designer elects to have the space-conditioning system operate at a ventilation rate higher than required by the Energy Standards, then the space-conditioning system must be adjustable. This way so the ventilation rate can be reduced in the future to 1) the amount required by the Energy Standards, or 2) the rate required for make-up of exhaust systems that are required for a process, for control of odors, or for the removal of contaminants within the space §120.1(f).

In other words, a system can be designed to supply higher than minimum outside air volumes, provided dampers or fan speed can be adjusted to allow no more than the minimum volume if desired in the future. The Energy Standards preclude a system designed for 100 percent outdoor air, with no provision for any return air, unless the supply air quantity can be adjusted to be equal to the designed minimum outdoor air volume. The intent is to prevent systems from being designed that will permanently over-ventilate spaces.

4.3.15 Acceptance Requirements

§120.5

The Energy Standards have acceptance test requirements for:

1. Ventilation quantities at design airflow for constant volume systems §120.5(a)1 and NA7.5.1.2.
2. Ventilation quantities at design and minimum airflow for VAV systems §120.5(a)1 and NA7.5.1.1.
3. Ventilation system time controls §120.5(a)2 and NA7.5.2.
4. DCV systems §120.5(a)5 and NA7.5.5.

These test requirements are described in Chapter 13 and the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.5. They are described briefly in the following paragraphs.

Example 4-18: Maintenance of Ventilation System

Question

In addition to these commissioning requirements for the ventilation system, are there any periodic requirements for inspection?

Answer

The Energy Standards do not contain any such requirements since they apply to the design and commissioning of buildings, not to later operation. However, Section 5142 of the General Industry Safety Orders, Title 8, California Safety Code: Mechanically Driven Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning (HVAC) Systems to Provide Minimum Building Ventilation, states the following:

Inspection and Maintenance

(1) The HVAC system shall be inspected at least annually, and problems found during these inspections shall be corrected within a reasonable time.

(2) Inspections and maintenance of the HVAC systems shall be documented in writing. The employer shall record the name of the individual(s) inspecting and/or maintaining the system, the date of the inspection and/or maintenance, and the specific findings and actions taken. The employer shall ensure that such records are retained for at least five years.

(3) The employer shall make all records required by this section available for examination and copying, within 48 hours of a request, to any authorized representative of the Division (as defined in Section 3207 of Title 8), to any employee of the employer affected by this section, and to any designated representative of said employee of the employer affected by this Section.

4.3.15.1 Ventilation Airflow

NA7.5.1

Ventilation airflow must be certified to be measured within 10 percent of the design airflow quantities at two points of operation: full design supply airflow (all systems) and (for VAV systems) at airflow with all VAV boxes at or near minimum position. If airflow monitoring stations are provided, they can be used for these measurements.

4.3.15.2 Ventilation System Time Controls and Preoccupancy Purge

NA7.5.2

Programming for preoccupancy purge and HVAC schedules are checked and certified as part of the acceptance requirements. The sequences are also required to be identified by specification section paragraph number (or drawing sheet number) in the compliance documents.

4.3.15.3 Demand-Controlled Ventilation System

NA7.5.5

Demand controlled ventilation systems are checked for compliance with sensor location, calibration (either factory certificate or field validation) and tested for system response with both a high signal (produced by a certified calibration test gas applied to the sensor) and low signal (by increasing the set point above the ambient level). A certificate of acceptance must be provided to the enforcement agency that the demand control ventilation system meets the acceptance requirements for code compliance. The certificate of acceptance must include certification from sensor device manufacturers that their product will meet the requirements of §120.1(d)4F and will provide a signal that indicates the CO_2 level is within range required by §120.1(d)4.; certification from the controls manufacturer that their product responds to the type of signal that the installed sensors supply and can be calibrated to the CO_2 levels specified in §120.1(d)4; and that the CO_2 sensors have an accuracy within plus or minus 75 ppm at 600 and 1,000 ppm concentrations, and require calibration no more frequently than once every five years.

4.4 Pipe and Duct Distribution Systems

4.4.1 Mandatory Measures

4.4.1.1 Requirements for Pipe Insulation

§120.3 and Table 120.3-A

Most piping conveying mechanically heated or chilled fluids for space conditioning or service water heating must be insulated. The required thickness of piping insulation depends on the temperature of the fluid passing through the pipe, the pipe diameter, the function of the pipe within the system, and the insulation's thermal conductivity.

Table 4-15 specifies the requirements in terms of inches of insulation with conductivity within a specific range. These conductivities are typical for fiberglass or foam pipe insulation. Piping within fan coil units and within other heating or cooling equipment should be insulated based on the pipe diameter and the required value in the table.

Piping that does not require insulation includes the following:

1. Factory installed piping within space-conditioning equipment certified under §110.1 or §110.2, see Section 4.2 of this chapter. Nationally recognized certification programs that are accepted by the Energy Commission for certifying efficiencies of appliances and equipment are considered to meet the requirements for this exception.
2. Piping that conveys fluid with a design operating temperature range between 60 degrees F and 105 degrees F, such as cooling tower piping or piping in water loop heat pump systems.
3. Where the heat gain or heat loss, to or from piping without insulation, will not increase building source energy use. For example, piping connecting fin-tube radiators within the same space would be exempt, as would liquid piping in a split system air conditioning unit.

   This exception would not exempt piping in solar systems. Solar systems typically have backup devices that will operate more frequently if piping losses are not minimized.
4. Piping that penetrates framing members shall not be required to have pipe insulation for the distance of the framing penetration. Metal piping that penetrates metal framing shall use grommets, plugs, wrapping or other insulating material to assure that no contact is made with the metal framing.

Conductivities and thicknesses listed in Table 4-15 are typical for fiberglass and foam. When insulating materials are used that have conductivities different from those listed here for the applicable fluid range, such as calcium silicate, Equation 4-1 may be used to calculate the required insulation thickness.

When a pipe carries cold fluids, condensation of water vapor within the insulation material may impair the effectiveness of the insulation, particularly for applications in very humid environments or for fluid temperatures below 40 degrees F. Examples include refrigerant suction piping and low-temperature thermal energy storage (TES) systems. In these cases, manufacturers should be consulted, and consideration given to low permeability vapor barriers, or closed-cell foams.

The Energy Standards also require that exposed pipe insulation be protected from damage by moisture, UV and physical abrasion including but not limited to the following:

1. Insulation exposed to weather shall be installed with a cover suitable for outdoor service. The cover shall be water retardant and provides shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material. Insulation must be protected by an external covering unless the insulation has been approved for exterior use using a recognized federal test procedure. Adhesive tape shall not be used as protection for insulation exposed to weather.
2. Insulation covering chilled water piping and refrigerant suction piping located outside the conditioned space shall have a Class I or Class II vapor retarder. All penetrations and joints of which shall be sealed.

If the conductivity of the proposed insulation does not fall into the conductivity range listed in Table 4-15, the minimum thickness must be adjusted using the following equation:

Equation 4-10: Insulation Thickness

$$T = PR\left[\left(1 + \frac{t}{PR}\right)^{\frac{K}{k}} - 1\right]$$

Where:

T = Minimum insulation thickness for material with conductivity K, inches.

PR = Pipe actual outside radius, inches.

t = Insulation thickness, inches (Table 4-15 for conductivity k).

K = Conductivity of alternate material at the mean rating temperature indicated in Table 4-15 for the applicable fluid temperature range, in Btu-in./(h-ft^2 -°F).

k = The lower value of the conductivity range listed in Table 4-15 for the applicable fluid temperature, Btu-in/(h-ft^2 -°F).

Table 4-15: Pipe Insulation Thickness

Fluid Operating Temperature Range (°F)	Insulation Conductivity: Conductivity (in Btu·in/h·ft^2·°F)	Insulation Conductivity: Mean Rating Temperature (°F)		Nominal Pipe Diameter (in inches): ≤ 1	1 to <1.5	1.5 to < 4	4 to < 8	8 and larger
Space heating and Service Water Heating Systems (Steam, Steam Condensate, Refrigerant, Space Heating, Service Hot Water)				**Minimum Pipe Insulation Required (Thickness in inches or R-value)**				
Above 350	0.32-0.34	250	Inches	4.5	5.0	5.0	5.0	5.0
			R-value	R 37	R 41	R 37	R 27	R 23
251-350	0.29-0.32	200	Inches	3.0	4.0	4.5	4.5	4.5
			R-value	R 24	R 34	R 35	R 26	R 22
201-250	0.27-0.30	150	Inches	2.5	2.5	2.5	3.0	3.0
			R-value	R 21	R 20	R 17.5	R 17	R 14.5
141-200	0.25-0.29	125	Inches	1.5	1.5	2.0	2.0	2.0
			R-value	R 11.5	R 11	R 14	R 11	R 10
105-140	0.22-0.28	100	Inches	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
			R-value	R 7.7	R 12.5	R 11	R 9	R 8
				Nominal Pipe Diameter (in inches): ≤ 1	**1 to <1.5**	**1.5 to < 4**	**4 to < 8**	**8 and larger**
Space cooling systems (chilled water, refrigerant and brine)				**Minimum Pipe Insulation Required (Thickness in inches or R-value)[1]**				
40-60	0.21-0.27	75	Inches	Nonres 0.5 / Res 0.75	Nonres 0.5 / Res 0.75	1.0	1.0	1.0
			R-value	Nonres R 3 / Res R 6	Nonres R 3 / Res R 5	R 7	R 6	R 5
Below 40	0.20-0.26	50	Inches	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
			R-value	R 8.5	R 14	R 12	R 10	R 9

Footnote to TABLE 120.3-A:

1. These thicknesses are based on energy efficiency considerations only. Issues such as water vapor permeability or surface condensation sometimes require vapor retarders or additional insulation.

Source: California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards, *Table 120.3-A*

Example 4-19

Question

What is the required thickness for calcium silicate insulation on a four-inch diameter pipe carrying a 300-degree F fluid?

Answer

From Table 4-15, using data for 300-degree F fluid:

PR = 2"
t = 4.5" (from the table for a 4-inch pipe with 300-degree F fluid)
K = 0.40 (Btu-in.)/(h-ft²-°F) (from calcium silicate insulation manufacturer's conductivity data at 200-degree F)
k = 0.29 (Btu-in.)/(h-ft²-°F) (the lower value of the range for conductivity for 300-degree F fluid)

$$T = PR[(1 + t/PR)^{K/k} – 1]$$

$$T = 2[(1 + 4.5/2)_{(0.40/0.29)} – 1]$$

T = 8.2 inches

When insulation is not available in the exact thickness calculated, the installed thickness should be the next larger available size.

4.4.1.2 Requirements for Air Distribution System Ducts and Plenums

§120.4

Poorly sealed or poorly insulated duct work can cause substantial losses of air volume and energy. All air distribution system ducts and plenums, including building cavities, mechanical closets, air handler boxes and support platforms used as ducts or plenums, are required to be in accordance with the California Mechanical Code Sections 601, 602, 603, 604, 605 and ANSI/SMACNA-006-*2006 HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible*, 3rd Edition.

Healthcare facilities are exempt from §120.4 and shall comply with the applicable requirements of the California Mechanical Code.

A. Installation and Insulation

§120.4(a)

Portions of supply-air and return-air ducts or ductwork conveying heated or cooled air shall be insulated to a minimum installed level of R-8 when installed:

1. Outdoors
2. In a space between the roof and an insulated ceiling
3. In a space directly under a roof with fixed vents or openings to the outside or unconditioned spaces
4. In an unconditioned crawlspace
5. In other unconditioned spaces

Portions of supply-air ducts ductwork that are not in one of the above spaces shall be insulated to a minimum installed level of R-4.2 or be exposed in a directly conditioned space. For example, supply-air ducts that are inside the thermal envelope but concealed from view (such as ducts in a chase or above a hard or Tbar ceiling) are required to be insulated with at least R-4.2. However, if the ducts are exposed to directly conditioned space (i.e. ducts are visible to the occupants), then no insulation would be required.

B. Requirements of the California Mechanical Code

1. Mechanically fasten connections between metal ducts and the inner core of flexible ducts.
2. Joint and seal openings with mastic, tape, aerosol sealant or other duct closure system that meets the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, UL 181B or UL 723 (aerosol sealant).

All joints must be made airtight by use of mastic, tape, aerosol sealant, or other duct-closure system that meets the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, UL 181B, or UL 723. Duct systems shall not use cloth-back, rubber adhesive duct tape regardless of UL designation, unless it is installed in combination with mastic and clamps.

When mastic or tape is used to seal openings greater than 1/4 inch, a combination of mastic and mesh or mastic and tape must be used.

The Energy Commission has approved two cloth-backed duct tapes with special butyl or synthetic adhesives rather than rubber adhesive to seal flex duct to fittings. These tapes are:

1. Polyken 558CA or Nashua 558CA, manufactured by Berry Plastics, Tapes and Coatings Division; and
2. Shurtape PC 858CA, manufactured by Shurtape Technologies, Inc.

These tapes passed Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory tests comparable to those that cloth-back rubber-adhesive duct tapes failed (the Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory test procedure has been adopted by the American Society of Testing and Materials as ASTM E2342-03). These tapes are allowed to be used to seal flex ducts to fittings without combination with mastic. These tapes cannot be used to seal other duct system joints, such as the attachment of fittings to plenums and junction boxes. On their backing, these tapes have the phrase "CEC Approved," and a drawing of a fitting to plenum joint in a red circle with a slash through it (the international symbol of prohibition) to illustrate where they are not allowed to be used. Installation instructions in the box explains how to install the tape on duct core to fittings and a statement that the tape cannot be used to seal fitting to plenum and junction box joints.

C. Factory-Fabricated Duct Systems

§120.4(b)1

Factory-fabricated duct systems must meet the following requirements:

1. All factory-fabricated duct systems shall comply with UL 181 for ducts and closure systems, including collars, connections and splices, and be labeled as complying with UL181. UL181 testing may be performed by UL laboratories or a laboratory approved by the Executive Director.

2. Pressure-sensitive tapes, heat-activated tapes, and mastics used in the manufacture of rigid fiberglass ducts comply with UL 181 and UL181A.
3. Pressure-sensitive tapes and mastics used with flexible ducts comply with UL181 and UL181B.
4. Joints and seams of duct systems and their components shall not be sealed with cloth back rubber adhesive duct tapes unless such tape is used in combination with mastic and drawbands.

D. Field-Fabricated Duct Systems

§120.4(b)2

Field-fabricated duct systems must meet the following requirements:

1. Factory-made rigid fiberglass and flexible ducts for field-fabricated duct systems comply with UL 181. Pressure-sensitive tapes, mastics, aerosol sealants or other closure systems shall meet applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A and UL 181B.
2. Mastic Sealants and Mesh:
   a. Sealants comply with the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, and UL 181B, and shall be non-toxic and water resistant.
   b. Sealants for interior applications shall pass ASTM C 731(extrudability after aging) and D 2202 (slump test on vertical surfaces), incorporated herein by reference.
   c. Sealants for exterior applications shall pass ASTM C 731, C 732 (artificial weathering test) and D 2202, incorporated herein by reference.
   d. Sealants and meshes shall be rated for exterior use.
3. Pressure-sensitive tapes shall comply with the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A and UL 181B.
4. Drawbands used with flexible duct shall:
   a. Be either stainless-steel worm-drive hose clamps or UV-resistant nylon duct ties.
   b. Have a minimum tensile strength rating of 150 lbs.
   c. Be tightened as recommended by the manufacturer with an adjustable tensioning tool.
5. Aerosol-Sealant Closures.
   a. Aerosol sealants meet applicable requirements of UL 723 and must be applied according to manufacturer specifications.
   b. Tapes or mastics used in combination with aerosol sealing shall meet the requirements of this section.
6. Joints and seams of duct systems and their components shall not be sealed with cloth back rubber adhesive duct tapes unless such tape is used in combination with mastic and drawbands.

E. Duct Insulation R-Values

§120.4(c), §120.4(d), §120.4(e)

Since 2001, the Energy Standards have included the following requirements for the labeling, measurement and rating of duct insulation:

1. Insulation R-values shall be based on the insulation only and not include air-films or the R-values of other components of the duct system.
2. Insulation R-values shall be tested C-values at 75 degrees F mean temperature at the installed thickness, in accordance with ASTM C 518 or ASTM C 177.
3. The installed thickness of duct insulation for purpose of compliance shall be the nominal thickness for duct board, duct liner, factory made flexible air ducts and factory-made rigid ducts. For factory-made flexible air ducts, the installed thickness shall be determined by dividing the difference between the actual outside diameter and nominal inside diameter by two.
4. The installed thickness of duct insulation for purpose of compliance shall be 75 percent of its nominal thickness for duct wrap.
5. Insulated flexible air ducts must bear labels no further than three feet apart that state the installed R-value (as determined per the requirements of the Energy Standards).

A typical duct wrap, nominal 1-1/2 inches and 0.75 pound per cubic foot will have an installed rating of R-4.2 with 25 percent compression.

F. Protection of duct Insulation

§120.4(f)

The Energy Standards require that exposed duct insulation be protected from damage by moisture, UV and physical abrasion including but not limited to the following:

1. Insulation exposed to weather shall be suitable for outdoor service; e.g., protected by aluminum, sheet metal, painted canvas, or plastic cover. Insulation must be protected by an external covering unless the insulation has been approved for exterior use using a recognized federal test procedure.
2. Cellular foam insulation shall be protected as above or painted with a coating that is water retardant and provides shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material.

Example 4-20

Question

What are the sealing requirements in a VAV system having a static pressure set point of 1.25 inches water gauge and a plenum return?

Answer

All duct work located within the return plenum must be sealed in accordance with the California Mechanical Code Sections 601, 602, 603, 604, 605 and ANSI/SMACNA-006-2006 HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible 3rd Edition (refer to §120.4). Pressure-sensitive tape heat-seal tape and mastic may be used, if it meets the applicable requirement of UL 181, 181A, 181B, to seal joints and seams which are mechanically fastened per the California Mechanical Code.

4.4.2 Prescriptive Requirements for Space-Conditioning Ducts

Each of these applicable prescriptive requirements must be met. If one or more applicable requirements cannot be met, the performance method may be used as explained in Chapter 11.

4.4.2.1 Duct Leakage

§140.4(l)

Systems serving nonresidential buildings, including high-rise residential and hotel/motel guest rooms, shall have their ducts sealed when certain criteria are met. Healthcare facilities are exempt from §140.4(l) and shall comply with the applicable requirements of the California Mechanical Code.

Ducts that are part of small single zone systems with portions of the ductwork either outdoors or in uninsulated or vented ceiling spaces are required to be sealed and leak tested as specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA1. This will generally only apply to small commercial projects that are one or two stories with packaged single zone units or split systems. Duct leakage testing only applies when all of the following are true:

1. The system is constant volume, single zone, and serves an occupiable space.
2. The system serves less than 5,000 sq ft of conditioned floor area.
3. The system ductwork has 25 percent or more of the duct surface area located outdoors, in unconditioned space, in a ventilated attic, or a crawl space; where the U-factor of the roof is greater than the U-factor of the ceiling, or where the roof does not meet the requirements of §140.3(a)1B.

Where duct sealing and leakage testing is required, the ducts must be tested by a HERS certified agency to demonstrate a leakage rate of no more than 6 percent of the nominal supply fan flow.

Alterations to an existing space conditioning system may trigger the duct sealing requirement. For more information, see Section 4.9.4.3.

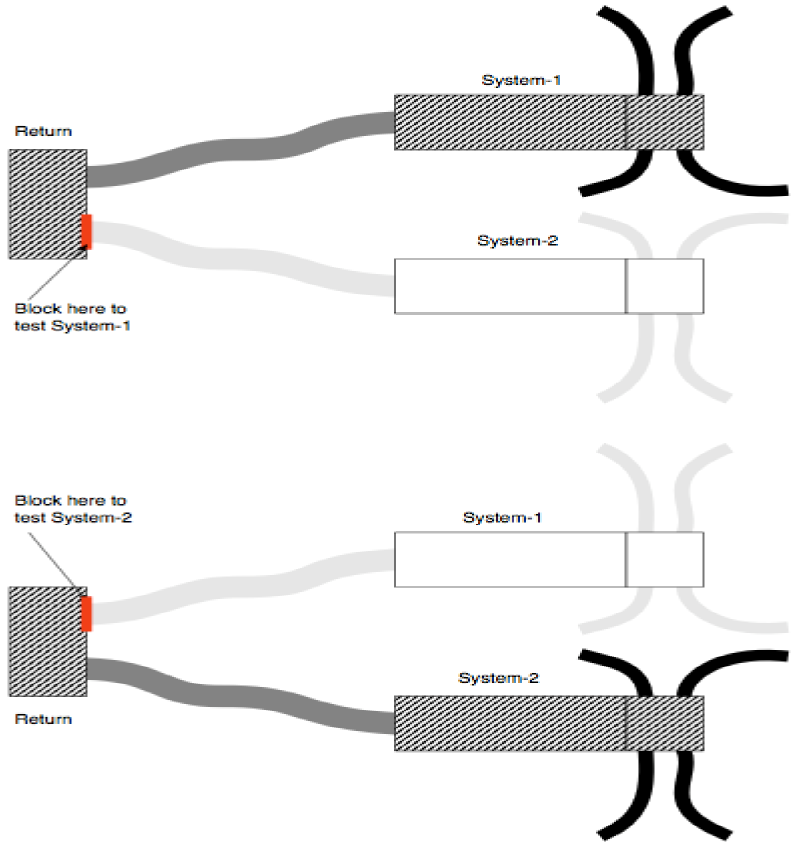
A. Duct Leakage Testing for Multiple Duct Systems with Common Return Ducts

If there are two or more duct systems in a building that are tied together at a common return duct, then each duct system should be tested separately, including the shared portion of the return duct system which should be included in each system test. Under this scenario, the portions of the second duct system that is not being tested must be completely isolated from the portions of the ducts that are being tested, so the leakage from the second duct system does not affect the leakage rate from the side that is being tested.

The diagram below represents the systems that are attached to a shared return boot or remote return plenum. In this case, the point in the return system that needs to be blocked off is readily accessible through the return grille.

The "duct leakage averaging" method where both systems are tested together (as though it is one large system) and the results divided by the combined tonnage to get the target leakage may not be used as it allows a duct system with more the 6 percent leakage to pass if the combined system's leakage is 6 percent or less.

Figure 4-12: Example of Two Duct Systems with a Common Return



Example 4-21

Question

A new 20-ton single zone system with new ductwork serving an auditorium is being installed. Approximately half of its ductwork is on the roof. Does it need to be leak tested?

Answer

Probably not. Although this system meets the criteria of being single zone and having more than 25 percent of the duct surface area on the roof, the unit probably serves more than 5,000 sq ft of space. Most 15- and 20-ton units will serve spaces that are significantly larger than 5,000 sq ft. If the space is 5,000 sq ft or less the ducts do need to be leak tested per §140.4(l).

Example 4-22

Question

A new 5-ton single zone system with new ductwork serving a 2,000 sq ft office is being installed. The unit is a down discharge configuration and the roof has insulation over the deck. Does the ductwork need to be leak tested?

Answer

Probably not. Although this system meets the criteria of being single zone and serving less than 5,000 sq ft of space, it does not have 25 percent of its duct area in one of the spaces listed in §140.4(l). With the insulation on the roof and not on the ceiling, the plenum area likely meets the criteria of indirectly conditioned, so no leakage testing is required.

B. Acceptance Requirements

The Energy Standards have acceptance requirements where duct sealing and leakage testing is required by §140.4(l).

These tests are described in the Chapter 13, Acceptance Requirements and the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.

4.5 HVAC System Control Requirements

4.5.1 Mandatory Measures

This section covers controls that are mandatory for all system types, including:

- Heat pump controls for the auxiliary heaters
- Zone thermostatic control including special requirements for hotel/motel guest rooms and perimeter systems
- Shut-off and setback/setup controls
- Infiltration control
- Off-hours space isolation
- Economizer fault detection and diagnostics (FDD)
- Control equipment certification
- Direct digital controls (DDC)
- Optimum start/stop controls.

4.5.1.1 Zone Thermostatic Controls

§120.2(a), (b) and (c)

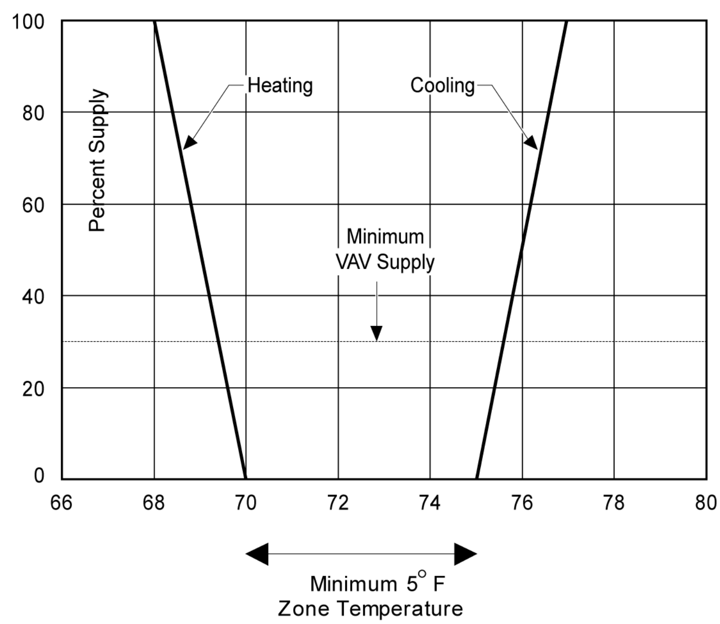
Thermostatic controls must be provided for each space-conditioning zone or dwelling unit to control the supply of heating and cooling energy within that zone. The controls must have the following characteristics:

1. When used to control **heating**, the thermostatic control must be adjustable down to 55 degrees F or lower.
2. When used to control **cooling**, the thermostatic control must be adjustable up to 85 degrees F or higher.

3. When used to control both **heating and cooling**, the thermostatic control must be adjustable from 55 degrees F to 85 degrees F and also provide a temperature range or **dead band** of at least 5 degrees F. When the space temperature is within the dead band, heating and cooling energy must be shut off or reduced to a minimum. A dead band is not required if the thermostat requires a manual changeover between the heating and cooling modes Exception to §120.2(b)*3*.
4. For all single zone, air conditioners and heat pumps all thermostats shall have setback capabilities with a minimum of four separate set points per 24-hour period. Also, the thermostat must comply with the occupant controlled smart thermostat requirements in §110.12(a), which is capable of responding to demand response signals in the event of grid congestion and shortages during high electrical demand periods.
5. Systems equipped with DDC to the zone level, rather than zone thermostats, must be equipped with automatic demand shed controls that provide demand shedding, as described later in Section 4.5.1.6.

The set point may be adjustable either locally or remotely, by continuous adjustment or by selection of sensors.

Figure 4-13: Proportional Control Zone Thermostat



Supplemental perimeter heating or cooling systems are sometimes used to augment a space-conditioning system serving both interior and perimeter zones. This is allowed provided controls are incorporated to prevent the two systems from conflicting with each other. If that were the case, then the Energy Standards require that:

1. The perimeter system must be designed solely to offset envelope heat losses or gains.

2. The perimeter system must have at least one thermostatic control for each building orientation of 50 ft or more.
3. The perimeter system is controlled by at least one thermostat located in one of the zones served by the system.

The intent is that all major exposures are controlled by their own thermostat, and that the thermostat is located within the conditioned perimeter zone. Other temperature controls, such as outdoor temperature reset or solar compensated outdoor reset, do not meet these requirements of the Energy Standards.

Example 4-23

Question

Can an energy management system be used to control the space temperatures?

Answer

Yes, provided the space temperature set points can be adjusted, either locally or remotely. This section sets requirements for “thermostatic controls” which need not be a single device like a thermostat; the control system can be a broader system like a DDC system. Some DDC systems employ a single cooling set point and a fixed or adjustable deadband. These systems comply if the deadband is adjustable or fixed at 5 degrees F or greater.

Thermostats with adjustable set points and deadband capability are not required for zones that must have constant temperatures to prevent the degradation of materials, an exempt process, or plants or animals (Exception 1 to §120.2(b)4). Included in this category are manufacturing facilities, hospital patient rooms, museums, and computer rooms. Chapter 13 describes mandated acceptance test requirements for thermostat control for packaged HVAC systems.

4.5.1.2 Hotel/Motel Guest Rooms and High-Rise Residential Dwellings Thermostats

§120.2(c)

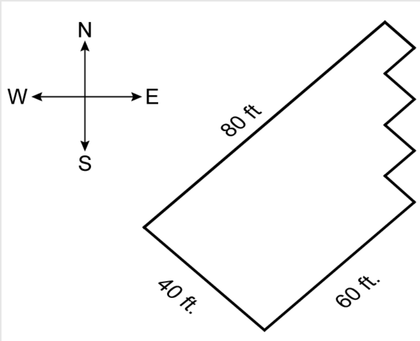
The Energy Standards require that thermostats in hotel/motel guest rooms have:

1. Numeric temperature set points in degrees F and degrees Celsius,
2. Set point stops that prevent the thermostat from being adjusted outside the normal comfort range (± 5-degree F or ± 3 degree Celsius). These stops must be concealed so that they are accessible only to authorized personnel.
3. Setback capabilities with a minimum of four separate set points per 24-hour period.

Example 4-24

Question

What is the perimeter zoning required for the building shown here?



Answer

The southeast and northwest exposures must each have at least one perimeter system control zone, since they are more than 50 ft in length. The southwest exposure and the serrated east exposure do not face one direction for more than 50 continuous ft in length. They are therefore “minor” exposures and need not be served by separate perimeter system zones but may be served from either of the adjacent zones.

Example 4-25

Question

Pneumatic thermostats are proposed for zone control. However, the model specified cannot be adjusted to meet the range required by §120.2(a) to (c). How can this system comply?

Answer

§120.2(a) to (c) applies to “thermostatic controls” which can be a system of thermostats or control devices, not necessarily a single device. In this case, the requirement could be met by using multiple thermostats. The pneumatic thermostats could be used for zone control during occupied hours and need only have a range consistent with occupied temperatures (e.g. 68 degrees F to 78 degrees F), while two additional electric thermostats could be provided, one for setback control (adjustable down to 55 degrees F) and one for set-up (adjustable up to 85 degrees F). These auxiliary thermostats would be wired to temporarily override the system to maintain the setback/setup set points during off-hours.

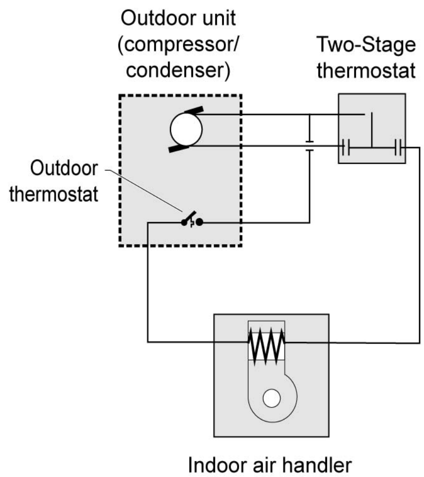
4.5.1.3 Heat-Pump Controls

§110.2(b) and §120.2(d)

Heat pumps with electric resistance supplemental heaters must have controls that limit the operation of the supplemental heater to defrost and as a second stage of heating when the heat pump alone cannot satisfy the load. The most effective solution is to specify an electronic thermostat designed specifically for use with heat pumps. This “anticipatory” thermostat can detect if the heat pump is raising the space temperature during warm-up fast enough to warrant locking out the auxiliary electric resistance heater.

This requirement can also be met using conventional electronic controls with a two-stage thermostat and an outdoor lockout thermostat wired in series with the auxiliary heater. The outdoor thermostat must be set to a temperature where the heat pump capacity is sufficient to warm up the space in a reasonable time (e.g., above 40 degrees F). This conventional control system is depicted schematically below in Figure 4-14.

Figure 4-14: Heat Pump Auxiliary Heat Control, Two-Stage and Outdoor Air Thermostats



4.5.1.4 Shut Off and Temperature Setup/Setback

§120.2(e)1,2 and 3

For specific occupancies and conditions, each space-conditioning system must be provided with controls that comply with the following requirements:

A. The control can automatically shut off the equipment during unoccupied hours and shall have one of the following:

   1. An automatic time switch device with the same characteristics that lighting devices must have, as described in Chapter 5, and a manual override accessible to the occupants that allows the system to operate up to four hours. The manual override can be included as a part of the control device, or as a separate override control.
   2. An occupancy sensor. Since a building ventilation purge is required prior to normal occupancy, an occupancy sensor may be used to control the availability of heating and cooling but should not be used to control the outdoor ventilation system.
   3. A four-hour timer that can be manually operated to start the system. As with occupancy sensors, the same restrictions apply to controlling outdoor air ventilation systems.

Exception to §120.2(e)1: The mechanical system serving retail stores and associated malls, restaurants, grocery stores, churches, or theaters equipped with seven-day programmable timers do not have to comply with the above requirements.

When shut down, the controls shall automatically restart the system to maintain:

B. A setback heating thermostat set point, if the system provides mechanical heating. *Exception:* Thermostat setback controls are not required in nonresidential buildings in areas where the winter median of extremes outdoor air temperature is greater than 32 degrees F.

1. A setup cooling thermostat set point, if the system provides mechanical cooling. *Exception:* Thermostat setup controls are not required in nonresidential buildings in areas where the summer design dry bulb 0.5 percent temperature is less than 100 degrees F.

C. Occupant-sensing zone controls

Space conditioning systems serving rooms that are required to have occupant sensing controls to satisfy the lighting control requirements of Section 130.1(c) and where Table 4-12 identifies the room or space is eligible to reduce the ventilation air to zero, shall incorporate this control strategy known as occupied standby mode. The room, space or zone is considered to be in occupied standby mode when all the rooms within the zone are unoccupied for more than five minutes. When a zone is in occupied standby mode, the cooling set point shall be increased by at least 2 degrees F and the heating set point shall be decreased by at least 2 degrees F, or for a multiple zone system with DDC to the zone level the cooling set point shall be increased by at least 0.5 degrees F and the heating set point shall be decreased by at least 0.2 degrees F. All airflow to the zone shall be shut off when in occupied standby mode. If the temperature in the zone drifts outside the deadband, then the full space conditioning system will turn on to satisfy the load in that zone.

This occupancy control must not prevent outside air ventilation of the space when the pre-occupancy ventilation purge cycle is required by §120.1(d)2. Pre-occupancy purge ventilates the space prior to scheduled occupancy each day to dilute and exhaust contaminants that have built up inside the building over night while the HVAC systems were off. Typically, the space is unoccupied during these periods and the occupancy control must not disable this scheduled ventilation cycle.

D. Exceptions for automatic shutoff, setback and setup, and occupant sensor setback:

1. *Exception to A, B, and C:* It can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the enforcement agency that the system serves an area that must operate continuously.
2. *Exception to A, B, and C:* Systems have a full load demand of 2 kW or less, or 6,826 Btu/h, if they have a readily accessible manual shut off switch. Included is the energy consumed within all associated space-conditioning systems including compressors, as well as the energy consumed by any boilers or chillers that are part of the system.
3. *Exception to A and B:* Systems serve hotel/motel guest rooms, if they have a readily accessible manual shut-off switch.

E. Hotel/motel guest room controls:

§120.2(e)4

Hotel/motel guest rooms shall have captive card key controls, occupancy sensing controls, or automatic controls such that within 30 minutes of a guest leaving the room, set points are set-up of at least +5 degrees F (+3 degrees Celsius) in cooling mode and set-down of at least -5 degrees F (-3 degrees Celsius) in heating mode.

Example 4-26

Question

Can occupancy sensors be used in an office to shut off the VAV boxes during periods when the spaces are unoccupied?

Answer

Yes, only if the ventilation is provided through operable openings. With a mechanical ventilation design the occupancy sensor could be used to reduce the VAV box airflow to the minimum allowed for ventilation. It should not shut the airflow off completely; ventilation must be supplied to each space at all times when the space is usually occupied.

Example 4-27

Question

Must a 48,000 sq ft building with 35 fan coil units have 35-time switches?

Answer

No. More than one space-conditioning system may be grouped on a single time switch, subject to the area limitations required by the isolation requirements (see Isolation). In this case, the building would need two isolation zones, each no larger than 25,000 sq ft, and each having its own time switch.

Example 4-28

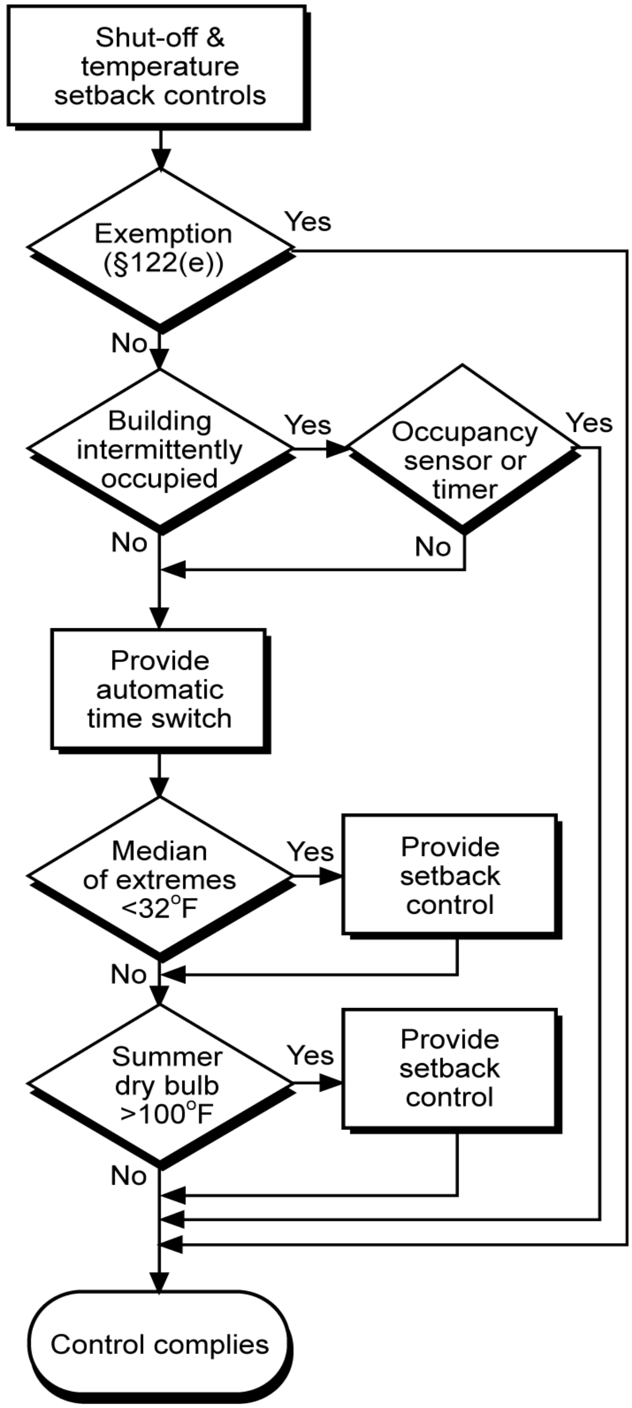
Question

Can a thermostat with set points determined by sensors (such as a bi-metal sensor encased in a bulb) be used to accomplish a night setback?

Answer

Yes. The thermostat must have two heating sensors, one each for the occupied and unoccupied temperatures. The controls must allow the setback sensor to override the system shutdown.

Figure 4-15: Shut-Off and Setback Controls Flowchart



These provisions are required by the Energy Standards to reduce the likelihood that shut-off controls will be circumvented to cause equipment to operate continuously during unoccupied hours.

Example 4-29

Question

If a building has a system comprised of 30 fan coil units, each with a 300-watt fan, a 500,000 Btu/h boiler, and a 30-ton chiller, can an automatic time switch be used to control only the boiler and chiller (fan coils operate continuously)?

Answer

No. The 2 kW criteria applies to the system as a whole and is not applied to each component independently. While each fan coil only draws 300 W, they are served by a boiler and chiller that draw much more. The consumption for the system is well in excess of 2 kW.

Assuming the units serve a total area of less than 25,000 sq ft (see Isolation), one-time switch may control the entire system.

4.5.1.5 Infiltration Control

§120.2(f)

Outdoor air supply and exhaust equipment must incorporate dampers that automatically close when fans shut down.

Fans shut down when ventilation or conditioned air is not necessary for the building, which only occurs when a normally scheduled unoccupied period begins (such as overnight or a weekend for office buildings) or when occupancy sensors are used for ventilation control. The dampers may either be motorized, or of the gravity type. However only motorized dampers that remain closed when the fan turns on would be capable of accomplishing the best practice below.

Best Practice

Though the Energy Standards only specify fan shut down, as a best practice outside air dampers should also remain completely closed during the unoccupied periods, even when the fan turns on to provide setback heating or cooling. However, to avoid instances of insufficient ventilation, or sick building syndrome, the designer should specify that the outside air dampers open and provide ventilation if:

- The unoccupied period is a one-hour pre-occupancy purge ventilation, as per §120.1(c)2.
- The damper is enabled by an occupant sensor in the building as per §120.1(c)5, indicating that there are occupants that demand ventilation air.
- The damper is enabled by an override signal as per §120.2(e)1, which includes an occupancy sensor but also an automatic time switch control device or manually operated four-hour timer.

Exception 1: Equipment that serves an area that must operate continuously.

Exception 2: Damper control required on gravity ventilators or other non-electrical equipment, provided that readily accessible manual controls are incorporated.

Exceptions 3 and 4: Damper control is not required at combustion air intakes and shaft vents, or where prohibited by other provisions of law. If the designer elects to install dampers or shaft vents to help control stack-induced infiltration, the damper should be motorized and controlled to open in a fire in accordance with applicable fire codes.

4.5.1.6 Isolation Area Controls

§120.2(g)

Large space-conditioning systems serving multiple zones may waste considerable quantities of energy by conditioning all zones when only a few are occupied. Typically, this occurs during evenings or weekends when less people are working. When the total area served by a system exceeds 25,000 sq ft, the Energy Standards require that the system be designed, installed and controlled with area isolation devices to minimize energy consumption during these times. The requirements are:

1. The building shall be divided into isolation areas, the area of each not exceeding 25,000 sq ft. An isolation area may consist of one or more zones.
2. An isolation area cannot include spaces on different floors.
3. Each isolation area shall be provided with isolation devices such as valves or dampers that allow the supply of heating or cooling to be setback or shut off independently of other isolation areas.
4. Each isolation area shall be controlled with an automatic time switch, occupancy sensor, or manual timer. The requirements for these shut-off devices are the same as described previously in 4.5.1.4. As discussed previously for occupancy sensors, a building purge must be incorporated into the control sequences for normally occupied spaces, so occupancy sensors and manual timers are best limited to use in those areas that are intermittently occupied.

Any zones requiring continuous operation do not have to be included in an isolation area.

Example 4-30

Question

How many isolation zones does a 55,000 sq ft building require?

Answer

At least three. Each isolation zone may not exceed 25,000 sq ft.

A. Isolation of Zonal Systems

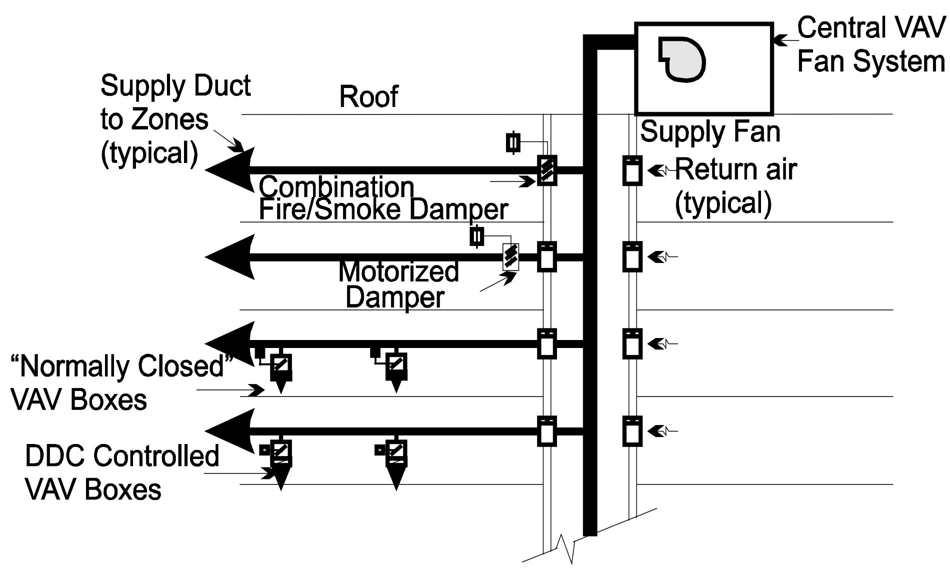
Small zonal type systems such as water loop heat pumps or fan coils may be grouped on automatic time-switch devices, with control interlocks that start the central plant equipment whenever any isolation area is occupied. The isolation requirements apply to equipment supplying heating and cooling only; central ventilation systems serving zonal type systems do not require these devices.

B. Isolation of Central Air Systems

Figure 4-18 below depicts four methods of area isolation with a central VAV system:

1. On the lowest floor, programmable DDC boxes can be switched on a separate time schedule for each zone or blocks of zones. When unoccupied, the boxes can be programmed to have zero minimum volume set points and unoccupied setback/setup set points. This form of isolation can be used for sections of a single floor distribution system.
2. On the second floor, normally closed pneumatic or electric VAV boxes are used to isolate zones or groups of zones. In this scheme the control source (pneumatic air or control power) for each group is switched on a separate control signal from an individual time schedule. Again, this form of isolation can be used for sections of a single floor distribution system.
3. On the third floor, isolation is achieved by inserting a single motorized damper on the trunk of the distribution ductwork. With the code requirement for fire/smoke dampers (see next numbered item) this method is somewhat obsolete. When applied, this method can only control a single trunk duct. Care must be taken to integrate the motorized damper controls into the fire/life safety system.
4. On the top floor, a combination fire smoke damper is controlled to provide the isolation. This control can only be used on a single trunk duct. Fire/smoke dampers required by code can be used for isolation at virtually no cost, provided that they are wired so that the fire life-safety controls take precedence over off-hour controls (local fire officials generally allow this dual usage of smoke dampers since it increases the likelihood that the dampers will be in good working order in the event of a fire). No isolation devices are required on the return.

Figure 4-16: Isolation Methods for a Central VAV System



Example 4-31

Question

Does each isolation area require a ventilation purge?

Answer

Yes. Consider each isolation area as if it were a separate air-handling system, each with its own time schedule, setback and setup control.

C. Turndown of Central Equipment

Where isolation areas are provided, it is critical that the designer plans the central systems (fans, pumps, boilers and chillers) to have sufficient stages of capacity or turndown controls to operate stably, as required to serve the smallest isolation area on the system. Failure to do so may cause fans to operate in surge, excessive equipment cycling and loss of temperature control. Schemes include:

1. Application of demand-based supply pressure reset for VAV fan systems. This will generally keep variable speed driven fans out of surge and can provide 10:1 turndown.
2. Use of pony chillers, an additional small chiller to be used at partial load conditions, or unevenly split capacities in chilled water plants. This may be required anyway to serve 24/7 loads.
3. Unevenly split boiler plants.

4.5.1.7 Automatic Demand Shed Controls

§110.12

HVAC systems with DDC to the zone level must be programmed to allow centralized demand shed for non-critical zones as follows:

1. The controls shall have the capability to remotely increase the operating cooling temperature set points by four degrees or more in all non-critical zones, via signal from a centralized contact or software point within an EMCS.
2. The controls shall have the capability to remotely decrease the operating heating temperature set points by four degrees or more in all non-critical zones, via signal from a centralized contact or software point within an EMCS.
3. The controls shall have the capability to remotely reset the temperatures in all non-critical zones to original operating levels, via signal from a centralized contact or software point within an EMCS.
4. The controls shall be programmed to provide an adjustable rate of change for the temperature increase, decrease, and reset.
5. The controls shall have the following features:
   a. The ability to be disabled by authorized facility operators.
   b. Controlled manually by authorized facility operators to allow adjustment of heating and cooling set points globally from a single point in the EMCS.
   c. Upon receipt of a demand response signal, the space-conditioning systems shall automatically conduct a centralized demand shed (as specified in one and two above) for non-critical zones during the demand response period.

The Energy Standards defines a critical zone as a zone serving a process where reset of the zone temperature set point during a demand shed event might disrupt the process, including but not limited to data centers, telecom/private branch exchange rooms, and laboratories.

To comply with this requirement, each non-critical zone temperature-control loop will need a switch that adds in an offset on the cooling temperature set point from a central demand shed signal. A rate of change limiter can either be built into the zone control or into the functional block for the central offset value. The central demand shed signal can be activated either through a global software point or a hardwired digital contact.

This requirement is enhanced with an acceptance test to ensure that the system was programmed as required.

4.5.1.8 Economizer Fault Detection and Diagnostics

§120.2(i)

Economizer Fault Detection and Diagnostics (FDD) is a mandatory requirement for all newly installed air handlers with a mechanical cooling capacity greater than 54,000 Btu/hr and an air economizer.

The FDD system can be either a stand-alone unit or integrated. A stand-alone FDD unit is added onto the air handler, while an integrated FDD system is included in the air handler system controller or is part of the DDC system.

Where required, the FDD system shall meet each of the following requirements:

1. Temperature sensors shall be permanently installed to monitor system operation of outside air, supply air, and return air.
2. Temperature sensors shall have an accuracy of ±2 degrees F over the range of 40 degrees F to 80 degrees F.
3. The controller shall have the capability of displaying the value of each sensor.
4. The controller shall provide system status by indicating the following conditions:
   a. Free cooling available.
   b. Economizer enabled.
   c. Compressor enabled. For systems that don't have compressors, indicating "mechanical cooling enabled" also complies.
   d. Heating enabled, if the system is capable of heating.
   e. Mixed air low limit cycle active.
5. The unit controller shall allow manual initiation of each operating mode so that the operation of cooling systems, economizers, fans, and heating system can be independently tested and verified.
6. Faults shall be reported using one of the following options:
   a. An EMCS that is regularly monitored by facility personnel
   b. Displayed locally on one or more zone thermostats or a device within five feet of a zone thermostat, clearly visible, at eye level and meet the following requirements:
      i. On the thermostat, device, or an adjacent written sign, there must be instructions displayed for how to contact the appropriate building personnel or an HVAC technician to service the fault.
      ii. In buildings with multiple tenants, the fault notification shall either be within property management offices or in a common space accessible by the property or building manager.
   c. Reported to a fault management application that automatically provides notification of the fault to a remote HVAC service provider. This allows the service provider to coordinate with an HVAC technician to service the fault.
7. The FDD system shall have the minimum capability of detecting the following faults:
   a. Air temperature sensor failure/fault. This failure mode is a malfunctioning air temperature sensor, such as the outside air, discharge air, or return air. This could include loss of calibration, complete failure (either through damage to the sensor or its wiring) or failure due to disconnected wiring.
   b. Not economizing when it should, meaning when programmed to do so. In this case, the economizer should be enabled yet is not providing free cooling. This leads to an unnecessary increase in mechanical cooling energy. For example, if the economizer high limit set point is too low (55˚F), or the economizer is stuck in the closed position.

c. Economizing when it should not, meaning when not programmed to do so. This is the opposite malfunction from the previous problem. In this case, conditions are such that the economizer should be at minimum ventilation position, but instead is open beyond the correct position. This leads to an unnecessary increase in heating and cooling energy. For example, if the economizer high limit set point is too high (82˚F), or the economizer is stuck in the open position.

d. Damper not modulating. This issue represents a stuck, disconnected, or otherwise inoperable damper that does not modulate open and closed. It is a combination of the previous two faults: not economizing when programmed to do so and economizing unnecessarily.

e. Excess outdoor air. This failure occurs when the economizer provides an excessive level of ventilation, usually much higher than is needed for design minimum ventilation. It causes an energy penalty during periods when the economizer should not be enabled (during cooling mode when outdoor conditions are higher than the economizer high limit set point). During heating mode, excess outdoor air will increase heating energy.

8. The FDD system shall be certified to the Energy Commission, by the manufacturer of the FDD system, to meet the requirements one through seven, above. The manufacturer submittal package is available in Joint Appendices *JA6.3 Economizer Fault Detection and Diagnostics Certification Submittal Requirements*.

For air handlers controlled by DDC (including packaged systems), FDD sequences of operations must be developed to adhere with the requirements of §120.2(i)1 through 7. FDD systems controlled by DDC are not required to be certified to the Energy Commission, but manufacturers, controls suppliers, or other market actors can choose to apply for certification. For DDC based FDD systems, a new acceptance test has been developed to test the sequences of operations in the field to verify that they in-fact comply with the required faults of §120.1(i).

Although not required by the Energy Standards, ASHRAE Guideline 36-2017 is a good reference for developing sequences of operations specifically for the faults listed in 120.2(i). The purpose of Guideline 36 is to provide uniform sequences of operation for heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems that are intended to maximize HVAC system energy efficiency and performance, provide control stability, and allow for real-time fault detection and diagnostics. To properly adhere to Guideline 36, all sequences of operations design elements in Sections 5.16.14 and/or 5.18.13 of that guideline must be implemented, including defining operating states, the use of an alarm delay, and the installation of an averaging mixed air temperature sensor. If a designer uses Guideline 36 to detect the required economizer faults in Title 24 Section 120.2(i), the sequences of operations should include Guideline 36 Fault Conditions numbers #2, 3, and 5 through 13, at a minimum. Other Title 24 FDD requirements in Section 120.2(i) and acceptance tests are not met by including these fault conditions into sequences of operations and must be met through other means.

4.5.1.9 Direct Digital Controls

§120.2(j)

The requirement for DDC will mostly impact smaller buildings, since it is already common practice to install DDC in medium and large buildings; primarily due to the size and complexity of HVAC systems of medium and large buildings, which DDC is well suited to operate. Small buildings in the past did not require DDC and therefore could not take advantage of basic energy savings strategies.

DDC systems facilitate energy saving measures through monitoring and regulating the HVAC systems and optimizing their efficient operation. With most buildings requiring DDC, the following energy saving measures will be triggered if DDC is to the zone level:

1. DCV (mandatory) - Section 4.3.9
2. Automatic Demand Shed Controls (mandatory) - Section 4.5.1.6
3. Optimum Start/Stop Controls (mandatory) - Section 4.5.1.9
4. Set point Reset Controls for VAV systems (prescriptive) - Section 4.5.2.3

For further explanation, see the appropriate compliance manual sections for the measures listed above.

The Energy Standards mandate DDC for only certain building applications with minimum qualifications or equipment capacities, as specified in Table 120.2-A of the Energy Standards, see Table 4-16 below for a duplicate of this table.

Table 4-16: DDC Applications and Qualifications

BUILDING STATUS	APPLICATIONS	QUALIFICATIONS
Newly Constructed Buildings	Air handling system and all zones served by the system	Individual systems supplying more than three zones and with design heating or cooling capacity of 300 kBtu/h and larger
Newly Constructed Buildings	Chilled water plant and all coils and terminal units served by the system	Individual plants supplying more than three zones and with design cooling capacity of 300 kBtu/h (87.9 kW) and larger
Newly Constructed Buildings	Hot water plant and all coils and terminal units served by the system	Individual plants supplying more than three zones and with design heating capacity of 300 kBtu/h (87.9 kW) and larger
Additions or Alterations	Zone terminal unit such as VAV box	Where existing zones served by the same air handling, chilled water, or hot water systems that have DDC
Additions or Alterations	Air handling system or fan coil	Where existing air handling system(s) and fan coil(s) served by the same chilled or hot water plant have DDC
Additions or Alterations	New air handling system and all new zones served by the system	Individual systems with design heating or cooling capacity of 300 kBtu/h and larger and supplying more than three zones and more than 75 percent of zones are new
Additions or Alterations	New or upgraded chilled water plant	Where all chillers are new and plant design cooling capacity is 300 kBtu/h (87.9 kW) and larger
Additions or Alterations	New or upgraded hot water plant	Where all boilers are new and plant design heating capacity is 300 kBtu/h (87.9 kW) and larger

Source: California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Table 120.2-A

Buildings that do not meet the specified minimum qualifications are not required to install DDC.

Follow the flowchart in Figure 4-19 to determine if a DDC system is required for newly constructed buildings, additions, or alterations. The Building Status Flowchart will indicate which equipment flowchart (Figure 4-20throughFigure 4-24) should be used for each type of HVAC equipment that will be installed in the building.

The flowcharts will indicate whether DDC is required for the building, how it should be applied to the equipment and whether it is required to be installed to the zone level.

Figure 4-17: Building Status Flowchart

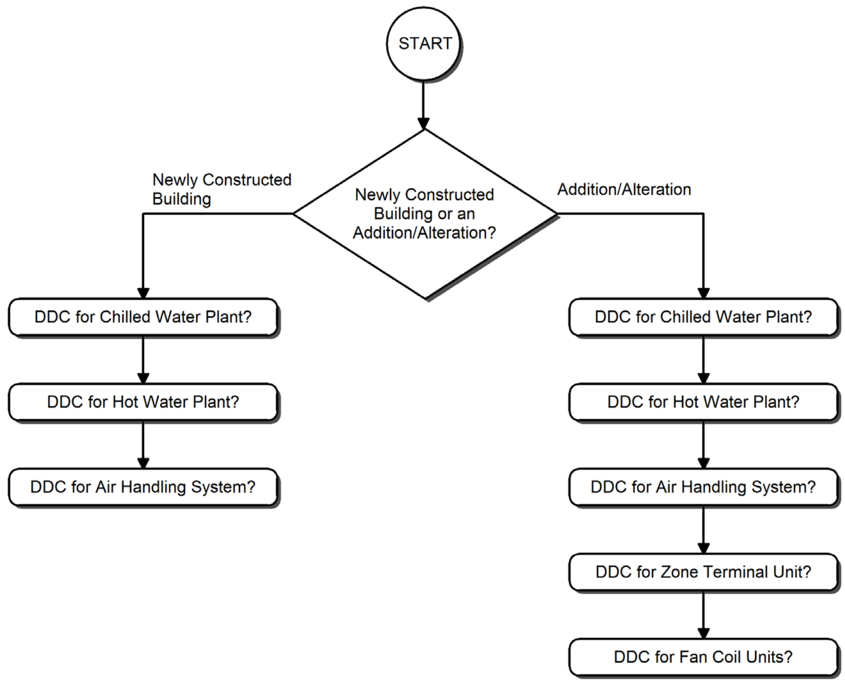


Figure 4-18: Chilled Water Plant Flowchart

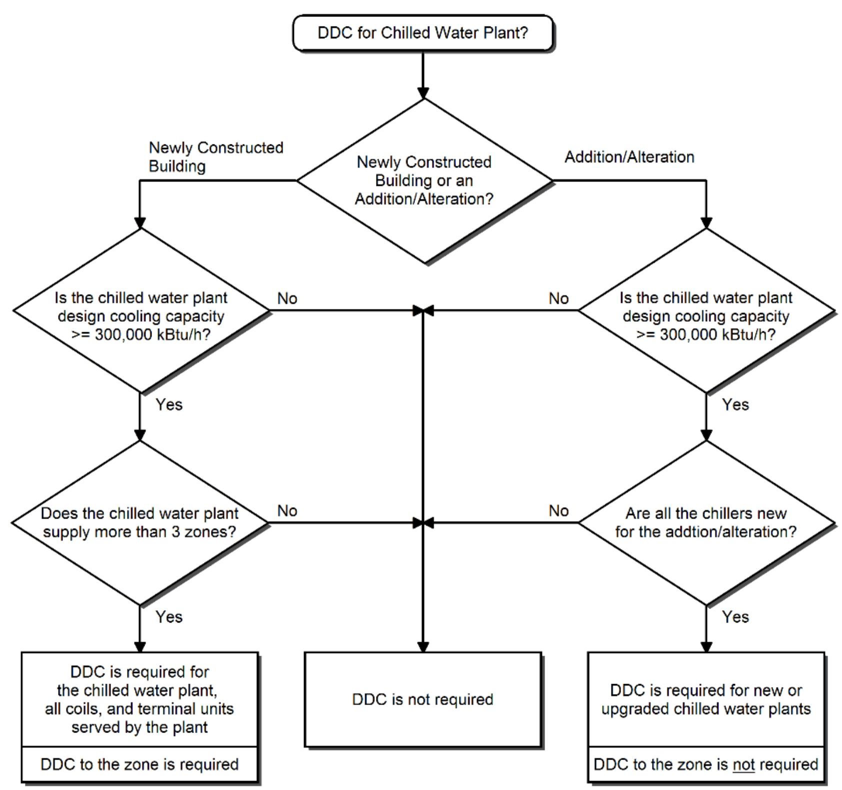


Figure 4-19: Hot Water Plant Flowchart

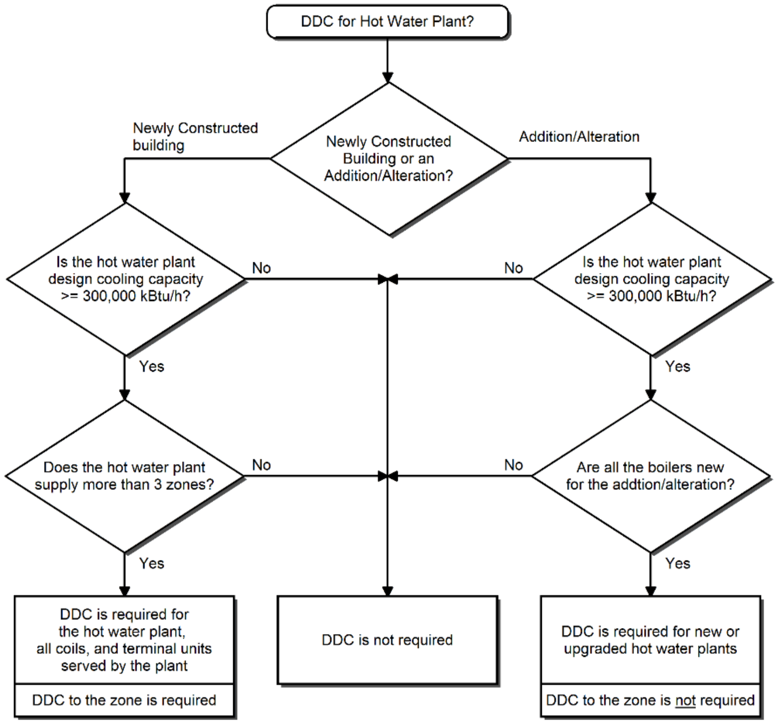


Figure 4-20: Air Handling System Flowchart

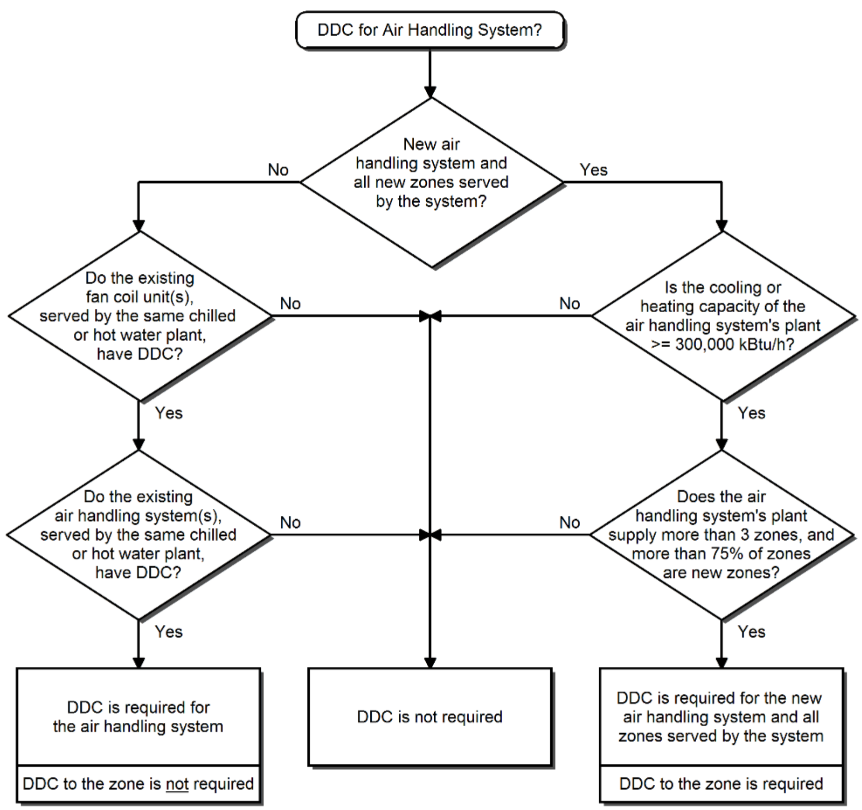


Figure 4-21: Zone Terminal Unit Flowchart

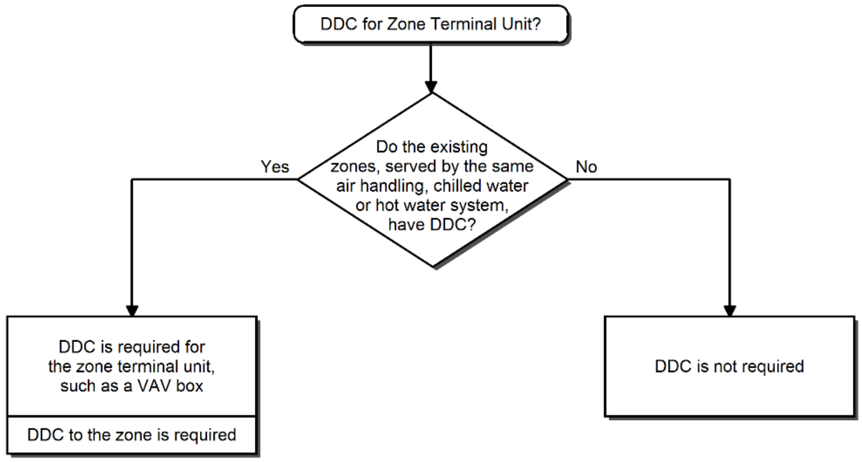
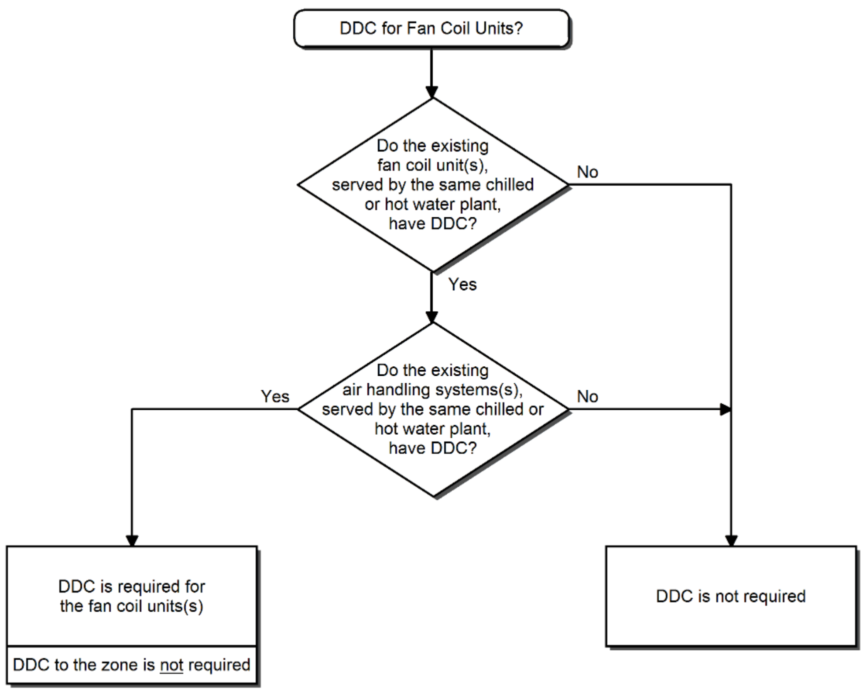


Figure 4-22: Fan Coil Units Flowchart



For additions or alterations to buildings, zones that are not part of the addition or alteration are not required to be retrofitted with DDC to the zone. Pre-existing DDC systems in buildings are not required to be retrofitted so DDC is to the zone.

Example 4-32

Question

If a newly constructed building has a HVAC system comprised of an air handling system, serving four zones and a chilled water plant with a design cooling capacity of 250,000 Btu/h, is DDC required?

Answer

No. Although the HVAC system is serving more than three zones, the chilled water plant does not meet the minimum design cooling capacity of 300,000 Btu/h (300 kBtu/h). A DDC system would be required if the design cooling capacity was 300,000 Btu/h or larger.

Example 4-33

Question

If an addition to a building requires a new VAV box, is DDC required?

Answer

Maybe. The answer is dependent upon whether there is already a DDC system for the zones served by the same air handling, chilled water or hot water system. Essentially this is to ensure that if a DDC system is already installed, then it must be continued throughout the building, including the addition.

Example 4-34

Question

If a building's chilled water plant is upgraded with new chillers that have a design capacity of 500 kBtu/h and serves three zones, is DDC required?

Answer

Yes. The criteria that triggers the DDC requirement is that the plant upgrade is installing **new** chillers with a cooling capacity greater than 300 kBtu/h. In this case, the number of zones is irrelevant for determining if DDC is required.

The Energy Standards now require the mandated DDC system to have the following capabilities to ensure that the full energy saving benefits of DDC:

1. Monitor zone and system demand for fan pressure, pump pressure, heating and cooling
2. Transfer zone and system demand information from zones to air distribution system controllers and from air distribution systems to heating and cooling plant controllers
3. Automatically detect those zones and systems that may be excessively driving the reset logic and generate an alarm, or other indication, to the system operator
4. Readily allow operator removal of zone(s) from the reset algorithm
5. Trend and graphically display input and output points for new buildings
6. Reset set points in non-critical zones, signal from a centralized contact or software point, as described in 4.5.1.7.

4.5.1.10 Optimum Start/Stop Controls

§120.2(k)

Optimum start/stop controls are an energy saving technique where the HVAC system determines the optimum time to turn on or turn off the HVAC system. This ensures that the space reaches the appropriate temperature during occupied hours only, without wasting energy to condition the space during unoccupied hours. It applies to heating and cooling.

Optimum start controls are designed to automatically adjust the start time of a space conditioning system each day. The purpose of these controls is to bring the space temperature to the desired occupied temperature levels at the beginning of scheduled occupancy. The controls take in to account the space temperature, outside ambient temperature, occupied temperature, amount of time prior to scheduled occupancy, and if present, the floor temperatures of mass radiant floor slab systems.

Optimum stop controls are designed to automatically adjust the stop time of a space conditioning system each day with the intent of letting the space temperature coast to the unoccupied temperature levels after the end of scheduled occupancy. The controls shall take in to account the space temperature, outside ambient temperature, unoccupied temperature, and the amount of time prior to scheduled occupancy.

Systems that must operate continuously are exempt.

4.5.2 Prescriptive Requirements

4.5.2.1 Space Conditioning Zone Controls

§140.4(d)

Each space-conditioning zone shall have controls that prevent:

- Reheating of air that has been previously cooled by mechanical cooling equipment or an economizer.
- Recooling of air that has been previously heated. This does not apply to air returned from heated spaces.
- Simultaneous heating and cooling in the same zone, such as mixing supply air that has been previously mechanically heated with air that has been previously cooled, either by mechanical cooling or by economizer systems.

  Zones served by VAV systems that are designed and controlled to reduce the volume of reheated, recooled or mixed air to a minimum. The controls must meet all of the following:

  a. For each zone with DDC:

     1. The volume of primary air that is reheated, re-cooled, or mixed air supply shall not exceed the larger of 50 percent of the peak primary airflow or the design zone outdoor airflow rate, per Section 4.3.
     2. The volume of primary air in the dead band shall not exceed the larger of 20 percent of the peak primary airflow or the design zone outdoor airflow rate, per Section 4.3.

ii. The first stage of heating consists of modulating the zone supply air temperature set point up to a maximum set point no higher than 95 degrees F while the airflow is maintained at the deadband flow rate.

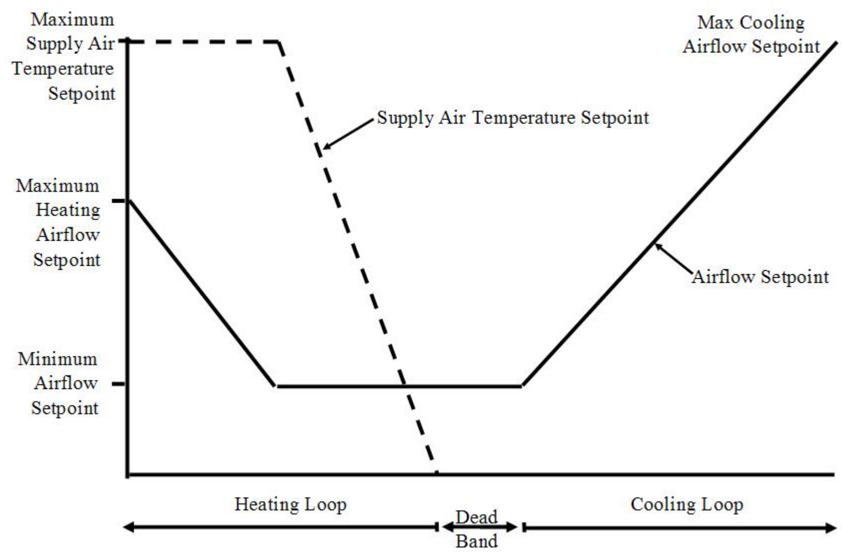
iii. The second stage of heating consists of modulating the airflow rate from the deadband flow rate up to the heating maximum flow rate.

iv. For each zone without DDC, the volume of primary air that is reheated, re-cooled, or mixed air supply shall not exceed the larger of 30 percent of the peak primary airflow or the design zone outdoor airflow rate, per Section 4.3.

For systems with DDC to the zone level, the controls must be able to support two different maximums -- one each for heating and cooling. This control is depicted in Figure 4-25 below. In cooling, this control scheme is similar to a traditional VAV reheat box control. The difference is what occurs in the deadband between heating and cooling and in the heating mode. With traditional VAV control logic, the minimum airflow rate is typically set to the largest rate allowed by code. This airflow rate is supplied to the space in the deadband and heating modes. With the "dual maximum" logic, the minimum rate is the lowest allowed by code (e.g. the minimum ventilation rate) or the minimum rate the controls system can be set to (which is a function of the VAV box velocity pressure sensor amplification factor and the accuracy of the controller to convert the velocity pressure into a digital signal). As the heating demand increases, the dual maximum control first resets the discharge air temperature (typically from the design cold deck temperature up to 85 or 90 degrees F) as a first stage of heating then, if more heat is required, it increases airflow rate up to a “heating” maximum airflow set point, which is the same value as what traditional control logic uses as the minimum airflow set point. Using this control can save significant fan, reheat and cooling energy while maintaining better ventilation effectiveness as the discharge heating air is controlled to a temperature that will minimize stratification.

This control requires a discharge air sensor and may require a programmable VAV box controller. The discharge air sensor is very useful for diagnosing control and heating system problems even if they are not actively used for control.

Figure 4-23: Dual-Maximum VAV Box Control Diagram



For systems without DDC to the zone (such as electric or pneumatic thermostats), the airflow that is reheated is limited to a maximum of either 30 percent of the peak primary airflow or the minimum airflow required to ventilate the space, whichever is greater.

Certain exceptions exist for space conditioned zones with one of the following:

1. Special pressurization relationships or cross contamination control needs (laboratories are an example of spaces that might fall in this category)
2. Site-recovered or site-solar energy providing at least 75 percent of the energy for reheating, or providing warm air in mixing systems
3. Specific humidity requirements to satisfy exempt process needs (computer rooms are explicitly not covered by this exception)
4. Zones with a peak supply air quantity of 300 cfm or less
5. Systems with healthcare facilities

Example 4-35

Question

What are the limitations on VAV box minimum airflow set point for a 1,000 sq ft office having a design supply of 1,100 cfm and eight people?

Answer

For a zone with pneumatic thermostats, the minimum cfm cannot exceed the larger of:

a. 1,100 cfm x 30 percent = 330 cfm; or

b. The minimum ventilation rate which is the larger of

1) 1,000 ft² x 0.15 cfm/ft² = 150 cfm; and

2) 8 people x 15 cfm/person = 120 cfm

Thus, the minimum airflow set point can be no larger than 330 cfm.

For a zone with DDC to the zone, the minimum cfm in the deadband cannot exceed the larger of:

a. 1,100 cfm x 20 percent = 220 cfm; or

b. The minimum ventilation rate which is the larger of

1) 1,000 ft² x 0.15 cfm/ft² = 150 cfm; and

2) 8 people x 15 cfm/person = 120 cfm

Thus, the minimum airflow set point in the dead band can be no larger than 220 cfm. And this can rise to 1100 cfm X 50 percent or 550 cfm at peak heating.

For either control system, based on ventilation requirements, the lowest minimum airflow set point must be at least 150 cfm, or transfer air must be provided in this amount.

4.5.2.2 Economizers

§140.4(e)

An economizer must be fully integrated and must be provided for each individual cooling air handler system. It must have a total mechanical cooling capacity over 54,000 Btu/h, a chilled water-cooling system without a fan, or a chilled water-cooling system that uses induced airflow. It must also have a cooling capacity greater than the systems listed in Table 4-17. The economizer may be either:

1. An air economizer capable of modulating outside air and return air dampers to supply all of the design supply air quantity as outside air;
2. A water economizer capable of providing all of the expected system cooling load at outside air temperatures of 50 degrees F dry-bulb and 45 degrees F wet-bulb and below.

Table 4-17 - Chilled Water System Cooling Capacity

Climate Zones	Total Building Chilled Water System Capacity, Minus Capacity of Cooling units with Air Economizers Building Water-Cooled Chilled-Water Systems	Total Building Chilled Water System Capacity, Minus Capacity of Cooling units with Air Economizers Air-Cooled Chilled-Water Systems or District Chilled-Water Systems
15	≥ 960,000 Btu/h (280 kW)	≥ 1,250,000 Btu/h (365 kW)
1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9 10,11,12,13,14	≥ 720,000 Btu/h (210 kW)	≥ 940,000 Btu/h (275 kW)
16	≥ 1,320,000 Btu/h (385 kW)	≥ 1,720,000 Btu/h (505 kW)

Source: California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Table 140.4-C

Depicted below in Figure 4-28is a schematic of an air-side economizer. All air-side economizers have modulating dampers on the return and outdoor air streams.

Best Practice:

To provide 100 percent of the design supply air, designers will need to specify an economizer with a nominal capacity sufficient to deliver the design air flow rate when the supply air damper is in the fully open position, and the return air damper is completely closed.

An appropriately sized economizer can also be estimated by determining the face velocity passing through the economizer, using the design airflow and the area of the economizer damper/duct opening.

The design airflow (cfm) should be available from the mechanical drawings or air handler cutsheet. The minimum area (sq ft) through which air is flowing from the outside to the fan can be measured in the field, or it can be found on the economizer damper cutsheet if the economizer damper is the smallest area. Dividing the design airflow by the smallest area will give the velocity of the air in ft per min.
Appropriately sized economizers that can supply 100 %percent of the supply airflow without large pressure drops typically have face velocities of less than 2,000 ft per min.

To maintain acceptable building pressure, systems with an airside economizer must have provisions to relieve or exhaust air from the building. In Figure 4-26, three common forms of building pressure control are depicted:

- Option 1: barometric relief
- Option 2: a relief fan generally controlled by building static pressure
- Option 3: a return fan often controlled by tracking the supply

Figure 4-27depicts an integrated air-side economizer control sequence. On first call for cooling the outdoor air damper is modulated from minimum position to 100 percent outdoor air. As more cooling is required, the damper remains at 100 percent outdoor air as the cooling coil is sequenced on.

Graphics of water-side economizers are presented in Section 4.10.7.2 at the end of this chapter.

Figure 4-24: Air-Side Economizer Schematic

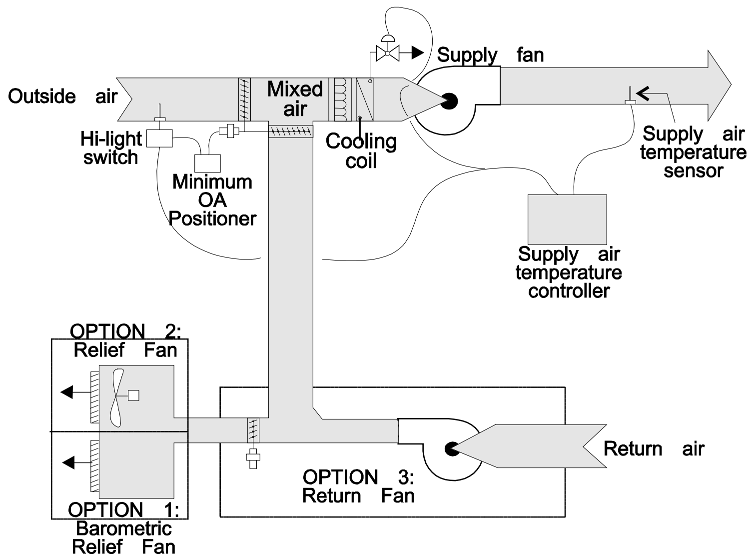
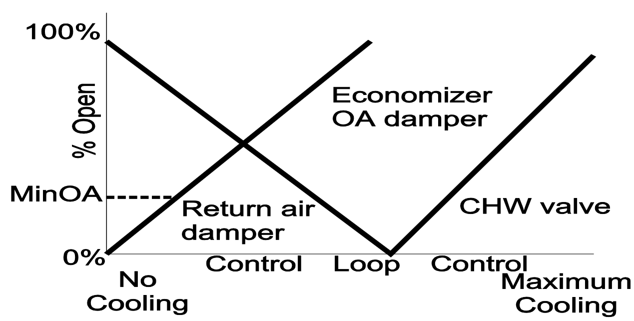


Figure 4-25: Typical Air-Side Economizer Control Sequencing



A. Economizers are not required where:

Exceptions to §140.4(e)1

1. Outside air filtration and treatment for the reduction of unusual outdoor contaminants make compliance unfeasible.
2. Increased overall building TDV energy use results. This may occur where economizers adversely impact other systems, such as humidification, dehumidification or supermarket refrigeration systems.
3. Systems serving high-rise residential living quarters and hotel/motel guest rooms.
4. Cooling systems have the cooling efficiency that meets or exceeds the cooling efficiency improvement requirements in Table 4-18.
5. Fan systems primarily serving computer room(s). See §140.9 (a) for computer room economizer requirements.

6. Systems designed to operate at 100 percent outside air at all times.

B. If an economizer is required, it must be:

§140.4(e)2

1. Designed and equipped with controls that do not increase the building heating energy use during normal operation. This prohibits the application of single-fan dual-duct systems and traditional multizone systems using the Prescriptive Approach of compliance. With these systems, the operation of the economizer to pre-cool the air entering the cold deck also precools the air entering the hot deck and thereby increases the heating energy.

   Exception: when at least 75 percent of the annual heating is provided by site-recovered or site-solar energy.

2. Fully integrated into the cooling system controls so that the economizer can provide partial cooling even when mechanical cooling is required to meet the remainder of the cooling load. On packaged units with stand-alone economizers, a two-stage thermostat is necessary to meet this requirement.

The requirement that economizers be designed for concurrent operation is not met by some popular water economizer systems, such as those that use the chilled water system to convey evaporatively-cooled condenser water for “free” cooling. Such systems can provide all of the cooling load, but when the point is reached where condenser water temperatures cannot be sufficiently cooled by evaporation; the system controls throw the entire load to the mechanical chillers. Because this design cannot allow simultaneous economizer and refrigeration system operation, it does not meet the requirements of this section. An integrated water-side economizer which uses condenser water to precool the Chilled Water Return (CHWR) before it reaches the chillers (typically using a plate-and-frame heat exchanger) can meet this integrated operation requirement.

Table 4-18: Economizer Trade-Off Table for Cooling Systems

Climate Zone	Efficiency Improvement[a]
1	70%
2	65%
3	65%
4	65%
5	70%
6	30%
7	30%
8	30%
9	30%
10	30%
11	30%
12	30%
13	30%
14	30%
15	30%
16	70%

Source: California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards ,Table 140.4-A

[a] If a unit is rated with an IPLV, IEER or SEER, then to eliminate the required air or water economizer, the applicable minimum cooling efficiency of the HVAC unit must be increased by the percentage shown. If the HVAC unit is only rated with a full load metric, such as EER or COP cooling, then that metric must be increased by the percentage shown.

C. Air-side economizer high limit switches

§140.4(e)2C

If an economizer is required by §140.4(e)1, and an air economizer is used to meet the requirement, the air side economizer is required to have high-limit shut-off controls that comply with Table 4-19.

1. The first column identifies the high limit control category. There are three categories allowed in this prescriptive requirement: fixed dry bulb; differential dry bulb; and fixed enthalpy plus fixed dry bulb.
2. The second column represents the California climate zone. “All” indicates that this control type complies in every California climate.
3. The third and fourth columns present the high-limit control set points required.

The Energy Standards eliminated the use of fixed enthalpy, differential enthalpy and electronic enthalpy controls. Research on the accuracy and stability of enthalpy controls led to their elimination (with the exception of use when combined with a fixed dry-bulb sensor). The enthalpy-based controls can be employed if the project uses the performance approach. However, the performance model will show a penalty due to the inaccuracy of the enthalpy sensors.

Table 4-19: Air Economizer High Limit Shut-Off Control Requirements

Device Type[a]	Climate Zones	Required High Limit (Economizer Off When): Equation[b]	Required High Limit (Economizer Off When): Description
Fixed Dry Bulb	1, 3, 5, 11-16	T_{OA} > 75° F	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75° F
Fixed Dry Bulb	2, 4, 10	T_{OA} > 73° F	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 73° F
Fixed Dry Bulb	6, 8, 9	T_{OA} > 71° F	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 71° F
Fixed Dry Bulb	7	T_{OA} > 69° F	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 69° F
Differential Dry Bulb	1, 3, 5, 11-16	T_{OA} > T_{RA}° F	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature
Differential Dry Bulb	2, 4, 10	T_{OA} > T_{RA}-2° F	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature minus 2° F
Differential Dry Bulb	6, 8, 9	T_{OA} > T_{RA}-4° F	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature minus 4° F
Differential Dry Bulb	7	T_{OA} > T_{RA}-6° F	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature minus 6° F
Fixed Enthalpy[c] + Fixed Dry Bulb	All	h_{OA} > 28 Btu/lb[c] or T_{OA} > 75° F	Outdoor air enthalpy exceeds 28 Btu/lb of dry air[c] or Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75° F

[a] Only the high limit control devices listed are allowed to be used and at the set points listed. Others such as dew point, fixed enthalpy, electronic enthalpy, and differential enthalpy controls, may not be used in any climate zone for compliance with §140.4(e)1, unless approval for use is provided by the Energy Commission executive director

[b] Devices with selectable (rather than adjustable) set points shall be capable of being set to within two degrees F and two Btu/lb of the set point listed.

[c] At altitudes substantially different than sea level, the fixed enthalpy limit value shall be set to the enthalpy value at 75 degrees F and 50 percent relative humidity. As an example, at approximately 6,000-foot elevation, the fixed enthalpy limit is approximately 30.7 Btu/lb.

Source: California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Table 140.4-B

D. Air Economizer Construction

§140.4(e)2D

If an economizer is required by §140.4(e)1, and an air economizer is used to meet the requirement, then the air economizer, and all air dampers shall have the following features:

1. A five-year factory warranty for the economizer assembly.
2. Certification by the manufacturer that equipment has been tested and is able to open and close against the rated airflow and pressure of the system for at least 60,000 damper opening and closing cycles. Required equipment includes, but is not limited to, outdoor air dampers, return air dampers, drive linkages and actuators.

3. Economizer outside air and return air dampers shall have a maximum leakage rate of 10 cfm/sq ft at 250 Pascals (1.0 in. w.g) when tested in accordance with AMCA Standard 500-D. The leakage rates for the outside and return dampers shall be certified to the Energy Commission in accordance with §110.0.
4. If the high-limit control uses either a fixed dry-bulb, or fixed enthalpy control, the control shall have an adjustable set point.
5. Economizer sensors shall be calibrated within the following accuracies:
    a. Dry bulb (db) and wet bulb (wb) temperatures accurate to plus or minus 2 degrees F over the range of 40 degrees F to 80 degrees F.
    b. Enthalpy accurate to plus or minus 3 Btu/lb over the range of 20 Btu/lb to 36 Btu/lb.
    c. Relative humidity (RH) accurate to plus or minus 5 percent over the range of 20 percent to 80 percent
6. Data of sensors used for control of the economizer shall be plotted on a sensor performance curve.
7. Sensors used for the high limit control shall be located to prevent false readings, including but not limited to, being properly shielded from direct sunlight.
8. Relief air systems shall be capable of providing 100 percent outside air without over-pressurizing the building.

E. Compressor unloading

§140.4(e)2E

Systems that include an air economizer must comply with the following requirements:

1. Unit controls shall have mechanical capacity controls interlocked with economizer controls such that the economizer is at 100 percent open position when mechanical cooling is on and does not begin to close until the leaving air temperature is less than 45 degrees F.
2. Direct Expansion (DX) units greater than 65,000 Btu/hr that control the capacity of the mechanical cooling directly based on occupied space temperature shall have a minimum of two stages of mechanical cooling capacity.
3. DX units not within the scope of number two (above), shall comply with the requirements in Table 4-20, and have controls that do not false load the mechanical cooling system by limiting or disabling the economizer or by any other means, except at the lowest stage of mechanical cooling capacity.

Table 4-20: Direct Expansion Unit Requirements for Cooling Stages and Compressor Displacement

Cooling Capacity	Minimum Number of Mechanical Cooling Stages	Minimum Compressor Displacement
≥65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	3 stages	≤ 35% full load
≥ 240,000 Btu/h	4 stages	≤ 25% full load

Source: California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Table 140.4-C

Chapter 13 of this manual describes mandated acceptance test requirements for economizers.

If the economizer is factory-calibrated the economizer acceptance test is not required at installation. A calibration certificate of economizer control sensors (outdoor air temperature, return air temperature, etc.) must be submitted to the local code enforcement agency in the permit application.

F. Water Economizer Specific Requirements

§140.4(e)3

Unlike air-side economizers, water economizers have parasitic energy losses that reduce the cooling energy savings. One of these losses comes from increases in pumping energy. To limit the losses, the Energy Standards require that precooling coils and water-to-water heat exchangers used as part of a water economizer system have either 1) a water-side pressure drop of less than 15 feet of water, or 2) a secondary loop so that the coil or heat exchanger pressure drop is not seen by the circulating pumps when the system is in the normal cooling (non-economizer) mode.

Water economizer systems must also be integrated with the mechanical cooling system so that they are capable of providing partial cooling--even when additional mechanical cooling is required to meet the remainder of the cooling load. This includes controls that do not false load the mechanical cooling system by limiting or disabling the economizer, or by any other means--such as hot gas bypass--except at the lowest stage of mechanical cooling.

Figure 4-26: Economizer Flowchart

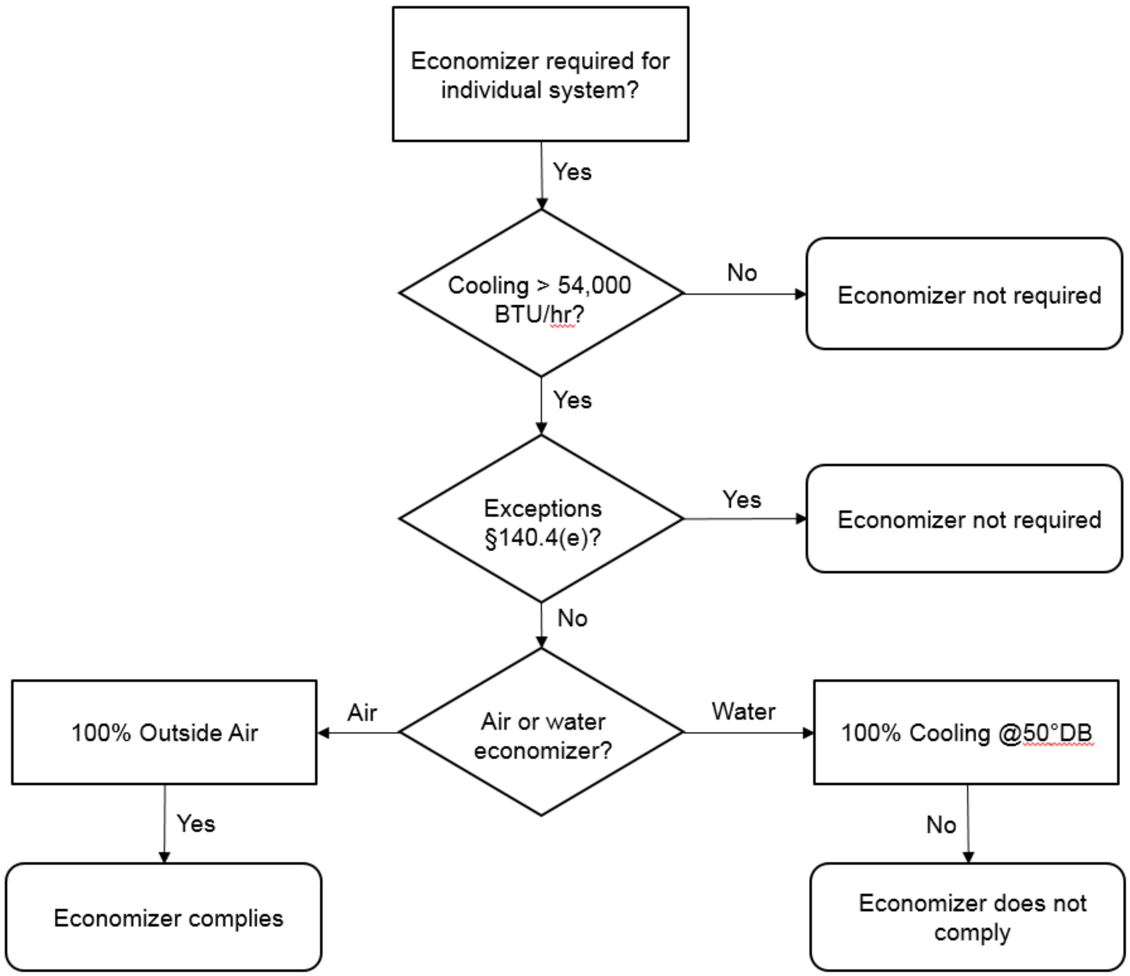
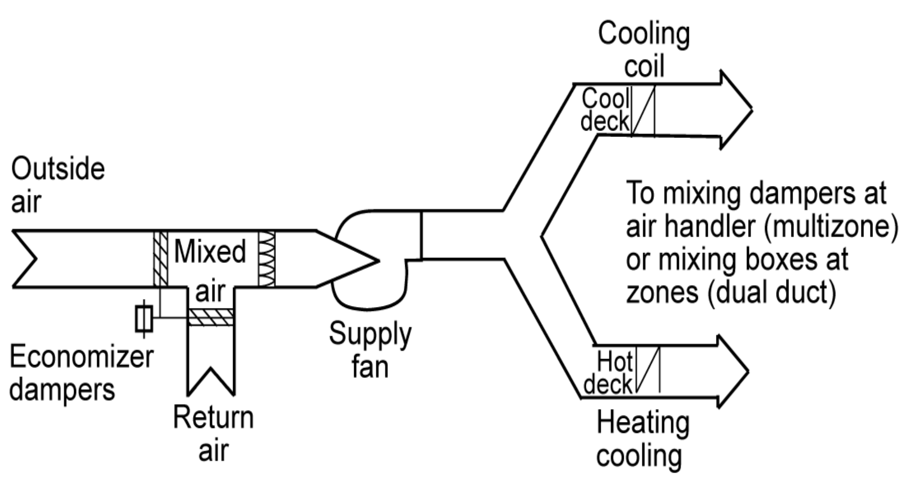


Figure 4-27: Single-Fan Dual-Duct System



Example 4-36

Question

If the design conditions are 94 degrees F db/82 degrees F wb can the design cooling loads to size a water-side economizer?

Answer

No. The design cooling load calculations must be rerun with the outdoor air temperature set to 50 degrees F db/45 degrees F wb. The specified tower, as well as cooling coils and other devices, must be checked to determine if it has adequate capacity at this lower load and wet-bulb condition.

Example 4-37

Question

Will a strainer cycle water-side economizer meet the prescriptive economizer requirements? (Refer to Figure 4-38)

Answer

No. It cannot be integrated to cool simultaneously with the chillers.

Example 4-38

Question

Does a 12-ton packaged AC unit in climate zone 10 need an economizer?

Answer

Yes. In addition, the economizer must be equipped with a fault detection and diagnostic system. However, the requirement for an economizer can be waived if the AC unit's efficiency is greater than or equal to an EER of 14.3. Refer to Table 4-18.

4.5.2.3 Variable Air Volume (VAV) Supply Fan Controls

§140.4(c) and §140.4(m)

Both single and multiple zone systems are required to have VAV supply based on the system type as described in Table 4-21. The VAV requirements for supply fans are as follows:

1. Single zone systems (where the fans are controlled directly by the space thermostat) shall have a minimum of two stages of fan speed with no more than 66 percent speed when operating on stage one while drawing no more than 40 percent full fan power when running at 66 percent speed.
2. All systems with air-side economizers to satisfy Section 4.5.2.2 are required to have a minimum of 2 speeds of fan control during economizer operation.
3. Multiple zone systems shall limit the fan motor demand to no more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent design air volume.

Variable speed drives can be used to meet any of these three requirements.

Actual fan part-load performance, available from the fan manufacturer, should be used to test for compliance with item 3 above. Figure 4-28 shows typical performance curves for different types of fans. Both air foil fans and backward inclined fans using either discharge dampers or inlet vanes consume more than 30 percent power at 50 percent flow (when certified manufacturer's test data shows static pressure set point is one-third of total design static pressure). These fans will not normally comply with these requirements unless a variable speed drive is used.

VAV fan systems that do not have DDC to the zone level are required to have the static pressure sensor located in a position such that the control set point is less than or equal to 1/3 of the design static pressure of the fan. For systems without static pressure reset, the further the sensor is from the fan the more energy will be saved. For systems with multiple duct branches in the distribution separate sensors in each branch must be provided to control the fan and to satisfy the sensor with the greatest demand. When locating sensors, care should be taken to have at least one sensor between the fan and all operable dampers (e.g. at the bottom of a supply shaft riser before the floor fire/smoke damper) to prevent loss of fan static pressure control.

For systems with DDC to the zone level the sensor(s) may be anywhere in the distribution system and the duct static pressure set point must be reset by the zone demand. Typically, this is done by one of the following methods:

1. Controlling so that the most open VAV box dampers are 95 percent open.
2. A trim and respond algorithm to continually reduce the pressure until one or more zones indicate that they are unable to maintain airflow rate set points.
3. Other methods that dynamically reduce duct static pressure setpoint as low as possible while maintaining adequate pressure at the VAV box zone(s) of greatest demand.

Reset of supply pressure by demand not only saves energy but it also protects fans from operation in surge at low loads. Chapter 13, Acceptance Requirements, describes mandated acceptance test requirements for VAV system fan control.

Figure 4-28: VAV Fan Performance Curve

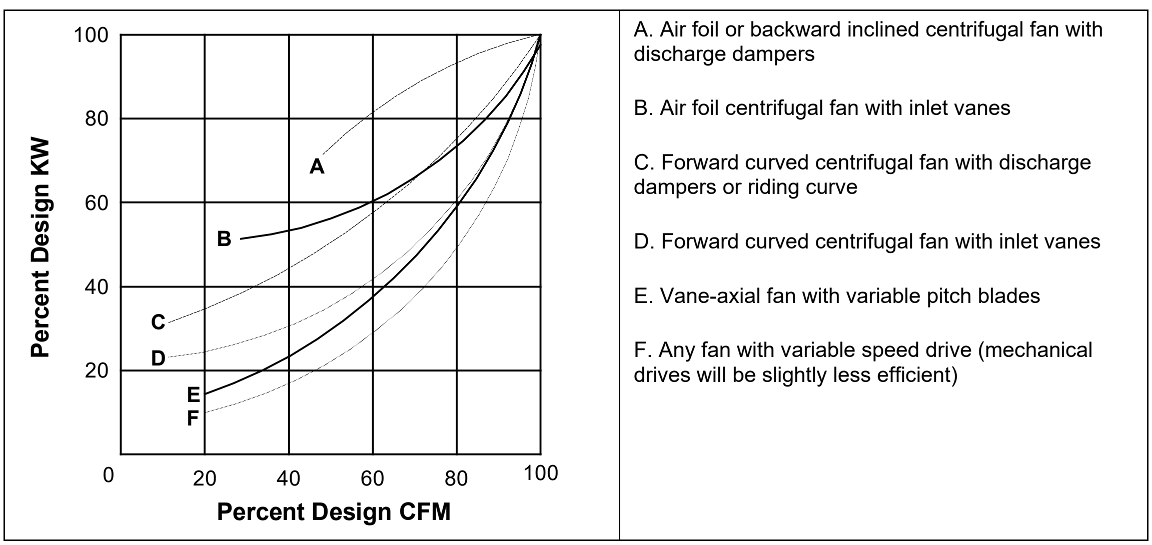


Table 4-21: Fan Control Systems

Cooling System Type	Fan Motor Size	Cooling Capacity
DX Cooling	any	≥ 65,000 Btu/hr
Chilled Water and Evaporative	≥ 1/4 HP	any

Source: California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Table 140.4-D

4.5.2.4 Supply-Air Temperature Reset Control

§140.4(f)

Mechanical space-conditioning systems supplying heated or cooled air to multiple zones must include controls that automatically reset the supply-air temperature in response to representative building loads or to outdoor air temperature. The controls must be capable of resetting the supply-air temperature by at least 25 percent of the difference between the design supply-air temperature and the design room air temperature.

For example, if the design supply temperature is 55 degrees F and the design room temperature is 75 degrees F, then the difference is 20 degrees F, of which 25 percent is 5 degrees F. Therefore, the controls must be capable of resetting the supply temperature from 55 degrees F to 60 degrees F.

Air distribution zones that are likely to have constant loads, such as interior zones, shall have airflow rates designed to meet the load at the fully reset temperature. Otherwise, these zones may prevent the controls from fully resetting the temperature or will unnecessarily limit the hours when the reset can be used.

Supply air reset is required for VAV reheat systems even if they have variable-speed drive (VSD) fan controls. The recommended control sequence is to lead with supply temperature set point reset in cool weather where reheat might dominate the equation and to keep the chillers off as long as possible. Thereafter the system can return to a fixed low set point in warmer weather when the chillers are likely to be on. During reset a demand-based control is employed that uses the warmest supply air temperature to satisfy all of the zones in cooling.

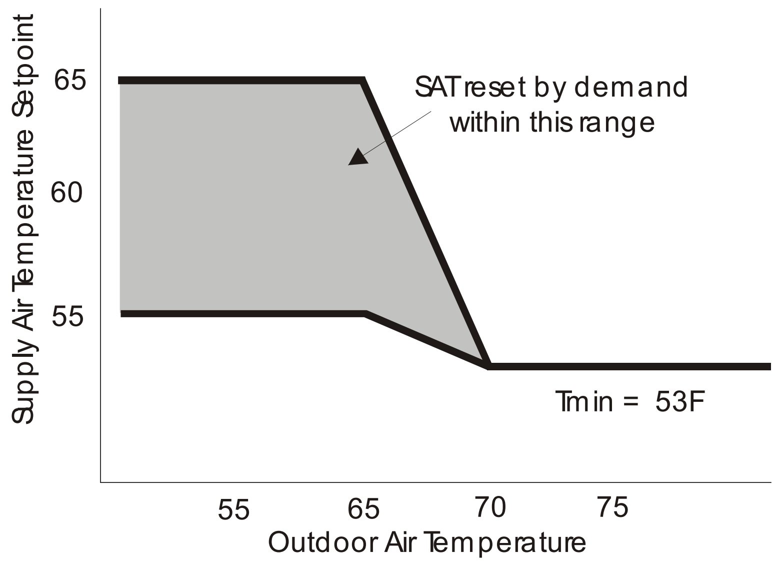
This sequence is described as follows: during occupied mode the set point is reset from
T-min (53 degrees F) (when the outdoor air temperature is 70 degrees F and above) proportionally up to T-max (when the outdoor air temperature is 65 degrees F and below). T-max shall range from 55 degrees F to 65 degrees F and shall be the output of a slow reverse-acting proportional-integral loop that maintains the cooling loop of the zone served by the system with the highest cooling loop at a set point of 90 percent (See Figure 4-31).

Supply temperature reset is also required for constant volume systems with reheat justified on the basis of special zone pressurization relationships or cross-contamination control needs.

Supply-air temperature reset is not required when:

1. The zone(s) must have specific humidity levels required to meet exempt process needs. Computer rooms cannot use this exception.
2. Where it can be demonstrated (to the satisfaction of the enforcement agency) that supply air reset would increase overall building energy use.
3. The space-conditioning zone has controls that prevent reheating and recooling and simultaneously provide heating and cooling to the same zone.
4. Systems serving healthcare facilities.

Figure 4-29: Energy Efficient Supply Air Temperature Reset Control for VAV Systems



Recommended Supply Air Temperature Reset Method

4.5.2.5 Heat Rejection Fan Control

§140.4(h)

When the fans on cooling towers, closed-circuit fluid coolers, air-cooled condensers and evaporative condensers are powered by a fan motor of 7.5 hp or larger, the system must be capable of operating at two-thirds speed, or less. In addition, the system must have controls that automatically change the fan speed to control the leaving fluid temperature or condensing temperature or pressure of the heat rejection device. Fan speed controls are exempt when:

1. Fans are powered by motors smaller than 7.5 hp.
2. Heat rejection devices are included as an integral part of the equipment listed in Table 4-1 through Table 4-11.
3. Condenser fans serving multiple refrigerant circuits or flooded condensers.
4. Up to one third of the fans on a condenser or tower with multiple fans have lead fans that comply with the speed control requirement.

Example 4-39

Question

A chilled water plant has a three-cell tower with 10 hp motors on each cell. Are speed controls required?

Answer

Yes. At minimum the designer must provide 2-speed motors, pony motors or variable speed drives on two of the three fans for this tower.

4.5.2.6 Hydronic System Measures

§140.4(k)

A. Hydronic Variable Flow Systems

§140.4(k)1

Hot water and chilled-water systems are required to be designed for variable flow. Variable flow is provided by using 2-way control valves. The Energy Standards only require that flow is reduced to whichever value is greater: 50 percent or less of design flow or the minimum flow required by the equipment manufacturer for operation of the central plant equipment.

There are two exceptions for this requirement:

1. Systems that include no more than three control valves.
2. Systems having a total pump system power less than or equal to 1.5 hp.

It is not necessary for each individual pump to meet the variable flow requirement. These requirements can be met by varying the total flow for the entire pumping system in the plant. Strategies that can be used to meet these requirements include but are not limited to variable frequency drives on pumps and staging of the pumps.

The primary loop on a primary/secondary or primary/secondary/tertiary system could be designed for constant flow even if the secondary or tertiary loop serves more than three control valves. This is allowed because the primary loop does not directly serve any coil control valves. However, the secondary and tertiary loops of these systems must be designed for variable flow if they have four or more control valves.

The flow limitations are provided for primary-only variable flow chilled-water systems where a minimum flow is typically required to keep a chiller on-line. In these systems minimum flow can be provided with either a bypass with a control valve or some three-way valves to ensure minimum flow at all times. The system with a bypass valve is more efficient as it only provides bypass when absolutely required to keep the plant online.

For hot water systems, application of slant-tube or bent tube boilers will provide the greatest flow turndown. Typically, copper fin tube boilers require a higher minimum flow.

Example 4-40

Question

A plant is trying to meet the variable flow requirements of Section 4.5.2.6. Must each individual pump meet these requirements for the plant to comply with the Energy Standards?

Answer

No. Individual pumps do not need to meet the variable flow requirements of this section. As long as the entire plant meets the variable flow requirements, the plant is in compliance. For example, the larger pumps may be equipped with variable frequency drives or the pumps can be staged in a way that can meet these requirements.

B. Isolation for Chillers and Boilers

§140.4(k)2 and 3

Plants with multiple chillers or boilers are required to provide either isolation valves or dedicated pumps. In addition, they must check valves to ensure that flow will only go through the chillers or boilers that are staged on. Chillers that are piped-in series for the purpose of increased temperature differential shall be considered as one chiller.

C. Chilled and Hot Water Reset

§140.4(k)4

Similar to the requirements for supply air temperature reset, chilled and hot water systems that have a design capacity greater than 500,000 Btu/h are required to provide controls to reset the hot or cold-water temperature set points as a function of building loads or the outdoor air temperature. This reset can be achieved either using a direct indication of demand (usually cooling or heating valve position) or an indirect indication of demand (typically outdoor air temperature). On systems with DDC controls reset using valve position is recommended.

Exceptions for this requirement:

1. Hydronic systems that are designed for variable flow complying with §140.4(k)1
2. Systems serving healthcare facilities

D. Isolation Valves for Water-Loop Heat Pump Systems

§140.4(k)5

Water-circulation systems serving water-cooled air conditioner and hydronic heat pump systems with a design circulation pump brake horsepower greater than five bhp are required to be provided with 2-way isolation valves that close whenever the compressor is off. These systems are also required to be provided with the variable speed drives and pressure controls described in the following section.

Although not required on central tenant condenser water systems (for water-cooled AC units and HPs) it is beneficial to provide the 2-way isolation valves on these systems as well. In addition to providing pump energy savings, these 2-way valves can double as head-pressure control valves allowing aggressive condenser water reset for energy savings in chilled water plants that are also cooled by the towers.

E. Variable-Speed Drive for Pumps Serving Variable-Flow Systems

§140.4(k)6

Pumps on variable flow systems that have a design circulation pump brake horsepower greater than 5 bhp are required to have variable-speed drives. Alternatively, they may have a different control that will result in pump motor demand of no more than 30 percent of design wattage, at 50 percent of design water flow.

Pressure Sensor Location and Set point

1. For systems without direct-digital control of individual coils reporting to the central control panel, differential pressure must be measured at the most remote heat exchanger or the heat exchanger requiring the most pressure. This includes chilled-water systems, condenser water systems serving water-cooled air conditioning loads and water-loop heat pump systems.
2. For systems with direct digital control of individual coils with a central control panel, the static pressure set point must be reset based on the valve requiring the most pressure and the set point shall be no less than 80 percent open. The pressure sensor(s) may be mounted anywhere.

Exceptions are provided for hot-water systems and condenser water systems that only serve water-cooled chillers. The hot water systems are exempted because the heat from the added energy of the pump riding the curve provides a beneficial heat that reduces the boiler use. This diminishes the benefit from the reduced pumping energy.

F. Hydronic Heat Pump (WLHP) Controls

§140.4(k)7

Hydronic heat pumps connected to a common heat pump water loop with central devices for heat rejection and heat addition must have controls that are capable of providing a heat pump water supply temperature dead band of at least 20 degrees F between initiation of heat rejection and heat addition by the central devices. Exceptions are provided where a system loop temperature optimization controller is used to determine the most efficient operating temperature based on real-time conditions of demand and capacity, dead bands of less than 20 degrees F shall be allowed.

4.5.2.7 Window/Door Switches for Mechanical System Shutoff

§140.4(n)

If a directly conditioned zone has a thermostat and one or more manually operable wall or roof openings to the outdoors, then the openings must all have sensors that communicate to the HVAC system. The HVAC controller must be capable of shutting off the heating or cooling to that zone if the sensor detects that the opening has remained open for more than five minutes. This can be accomplished by resetting the heating set point to 55 degrees F or the heating can be disabled altogether. If the HVAC system is in cooling mode, then similarly this requirement can be satisfied by resetting the cooling set point to 90 degrees F -unless the outside air temperature is less than the space temperature, in which case the cooling set point can be reset, or not. If the zone is in cooling and the outside air temperature is less than the space temperature, then additional infiltration from the opening provides economizer-free cooling and is not an additional cooling load on the mechanical system.

This requirement does not require any openings to the outdoors to.be operable. However, if operable openings are present, then they must comply with this requirement.

Mechanical ventilation as required by Section 4.3.2 must still be provided. The mechanical system shut off pertains to the space conditioning equipment only. Mechanical ventilation must still be provided if the space does not fall under the natural ventilation criteria. Systems that meet the ventilation requirements with natural ventilation, rather than mechanical ventilation, are not exempt from the window/door switch requirement. Thus, in the same way that most homeowners typically choose between opening the windows and running the heating/cooling, window/door switches will now cause occupants to choose between opening windows/doors and allowing full heating/cooling.

Manually operable openings to the outdoors include manually operable windows, skylights, and doors that do not have automatic closing devices (e.g. sliding balcony doors). Motorized openings (e.g., motorized skylights) are still considered manually operable if occupants can move the openings as desired and they will stay open until manually closed.

If a zone serves more than one room, then only the openings in the room with the thermostat are required to be interlocked. For example, if three perimeter private offices are served by a single VAV box then only the operable openings in the office with the thermostat need to be interlocked. The windows in the offices that do not have a thermostat do not need to be interlocked.

If there is a large room with more than one zone, then only the zones with operable windows in them need to be interlocked. For example, if a large open office has a perimeter zone and an interior zone in the same room and there are operable windows in the perimeter zone but not the interior zone then only the perimeter zone thermostat needs to be interlocked to the windows.

Exceptions to this requirement:

1. Interlocks are not required on doors with automatic closing devices
2. Any space without a thermostatic control
3. Healthcare facilities
4. High-rise residential dwelling units

Alterations to existing buildings are exempt from this requirement. Additions to existing buildings only have to comply if the operable opening(s) and associated zone are new.

4.5.3 Acceptance Requirements

There are a number of acceptance requirements related to control systems. These include:

1. Automatic time switch control devices
2. Constant volume package unit

3. Air-side economizers
4. VAV supply fan controls
5. Hydronic-system controls

These tests are described in Chapter 13 as well as the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.

4.6 HVAC System Requirements

There are no acceptance tests for these requirements.

4.6.1 Mandatory Requirements

4.6.1.1 Water-Conservation Measures for Cooling Towers

§110.2(e)

There are mandatory requirements (§110.2[e]) for the efficient use of water in the operation of open (direct) and closed (indirect) cooling towers. The building standard applies to the new construction and retrofit of commercial, industrial and institutional cooling towers with a rated capacity of 150 tons or greater. For these towers all of the following are required:

1. The towers shall be equipped with either conductivity or flow-based controls to manage cycles of concentration based on local water quality conditions. The controls shall automate system bleed and chemical feed based on conductivity, or in proportion to metered makeup volume, metered bleed volume, recirculating pump run time, or bleed time. Where employed, conductivity controllers shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's specifications.
2. Design documents have to document maximum achievable cycles of concentration based on local water supply as reported by the local water supplier, and using a calculator approved by the Energy Commission. The calculator shall determine maximum cycles based on a Langelier Saturation Index (LSI) of 2.5 or less. An approved calculator can be downloaded from the Energy Commission's website: http://www.energy.ca.gov/title24/2019standards/documents/maximum_cycles_calculator.xls
3. The towers shall be equipped with a flow meter with an analog output for flow. This can be connected to the water treatment control system using either a hardwired connection or gateway.
4. The towers shall be equipped with an overflow alarm to prevent overflow of the sump in case of makeup water valve failure. This requires either a water level sensor or a moisture detector in the overflow drain. The alarm contact should be connected to the building Energy Management Control System to initiate an alarm to alert the operators.
5. The towers shall be equipped with drift eliminators that achieve a maximum rated drift of 0.002 percent of the circulated water volume for counter-flow towers and 0.005 percent for crossflow towers.

As water is evaporated off the tower, the concentration of dissolved solids, like calcium carbonate and silica, will increase. The pH of the water will also change. With high levels of silica, or dissolved solids, deposits will form on the tower fill or clog the tower nozzles, which will reduce the tower's heat rejection capacity. High pH is a concern for metal tower basins and structural members. As the thresholds of these contaminants of concern are approached the automated controls should bleed some of the concentrated water out and dilute it with make-up water. The bleed can be controlled by measurement of make-up water flow (an indirect measurement of water drift and evaporation) or through conductivity (a measurement of the dissolved solids). The term "*cycles of concentration*" is the metric of how concentrated the contaminants are at the controlled level. The right value depends on the characteristics of the supply water, the rate of tower drift, the weather characteristics, and the load on the tower. Good practice involves maintaining the following levels:

- Silica levels should be maintained at less than or equal to 150 ppm
- The Langelier Saturation Index should be maintained at less than or equal to 2.5 (see explanation below)
- The pH in new cooling towers using galvanized metal should be maintained at less than or equal to 8.3 until metal is passivated, which occurs after three-six months of operation

To meet compliance, an Energy Commission approved calculator (NRCC-MCH-06-E) allows the building owner to enter water quality parameters – including conductivity, alkalinity, calcium hardness, magnesium hardness, and silica. These values are available from the local water supplier in the most recent annual Consumer Confidence Report or Water Quality Report. These reports are generally posted on the water supplier’s website, or by contacting the local water supplier by telephone. Many water districts have multiple sources of water which often are changed seasonally. For example, many water districts use a reservoir in the winter and spring then switch to well water in the summer and fall. Each supply will typically have different characteristics; the water treatment and control cycles of concentration should be seasonally shifted as well.

After entering the required water quality data, the user must also enter skin temperature; the default value of 110 degrees F is acceptable. Lastly, target tower cycles of concentration are entered into the calculator. The calculator computes the LSI based on the cycles of concentration entered by the user. The maximum value of the index is 2.5. Therefore, the user should enter the highest cycles of concentration value in 0.10 units that results in a calculated LSI not to exceed 2.5. The resulting cycles of concentration are considered by the Energy Commission to be the Maximum Achievable Cycles of Concentration and must be recorded on the mechanical compliance document (NRCC-MCH-06-E), to which a copy of the Consumer Confidence Report or Water Quality Report must be attached. The professional engineer of record must sign the compliance document (NRCC-MCH-06-E) attesting to the calculated maximum cycles of concentration.

Example 4-41

Question

What is the Langelier Saturation Index?

Answer

The Langelier Saturation Index predicts scaling. It indicates whether water will precipitate, dissolve, or be in equilibrium with calcium carbonate. The index is a function of hardness, alkalinity, conductivity, pH and temperature expressed as the difference between the actual system pH and the saturation pH.

Example 4-42

Question

Where is the data for makeup water quality?

Answer

Water agencies are required to make their annual water quality data available to the public. Water quality data is generally organized into an annual Consumer Confidence Report or Water Quality Report, which can often be found posted on the water agency's website by searching for the key words "water quality". Since many water districts have more than one water supply ask for a report for each source.

Example 4-43

Question

What if all, or some, of the water quality data is not provided in the Consumer Confidence Report or Water Quality Report?

Answer

Some data may be available by calling the local water agency's Water Quality Division. For example, agencies are not required to test for and report alkalinity. However, they often do test for it and will provide data over the phone or in an email. Also check with water treatment firms that are doing business in the area. They often have test data that they will share. Finally, it is possible to hire a water treatment firm to take samples of the water to test.

4.6.2 Prescriptive Requirements

4.6.2.1 Sizing and Equipment Selection

§140.4(a)

The Energy Standards require mechanical heating and cooling equipment (including electric heaters and boilers) serving high-rise residential buildings, hotel/motel buildings, and nonresidential buildings other than healthcare facilities to be the smallest size available, while still meeting the design heating and cooling loads of the building or spaces being served. Depending on the equipment, oversizing can be either a penalty or benefit to energy usage. For vapor compression equipment, gross oversizing can drastically increase the energy usage and in some cases cause premature failure from short cycling of compressors. Boilers and water-heaters generally suffer lower efficiencies and higher standby losses if they are oversized. On the other hand, cooling towers, cooling coils, and variable speed driven cooling tower fans can actually improve in efficiency if oversized. Oversized distribution ductwork and piping can reduce system pressure losses and reduce fan and pump energy.

When equipment is offered in size increments, such that one size is too small and the next is too large, the larger size may be selected.

Mechanical heating and mechanical cooling equipment serving healthcare facilities shall be sized to meet the design heating and cooling loads of the building or facility being served. Packaged HVAC equipment may serve a space with substantially different heating and cooling loads. The unit size should be selected on the larger of the loads, based on either capacity or airflow. The capacity for the other load should be selected as required to meet the load, or if very small, should be the smallest capacity available in the selected unit. For example, packaged air-conditioning units with gas heat are usually sized on the basis of cooling loads. The furnace is sized on the basis of airflow and is almost always larger than the design heating load.

Equipment may be oversized provided one or more of the following conditions are met:

1. It can be demonstrated (to the satisfaction of the enforcing agency) that oversizing will not increase building source energy use
2. Oversizing is the result of standby equipment that will operate only when the primary equipment is not operating. Controls must be provided that prevent the standby equipment from operating simultaneously with the primary equipment
3. Multiple units of the same equipment type are used, each having a capacity less than the design load. In combination, however, the units have a capacity greater than the design load. Controls must be provided to sequence or otherwise optimally control the operation of each unit based on load.

4.6.2.2 Load Calculations

§140.4(b)

For the purposes of sizing HVAC equipment, the designer shall use all of the following criteria for load calculations:

1. The heating and cooling system design loads must be calculated in accordance with the procedures described in the ASHRAE Handbook, Fundamentals Volume, Chapter 30, Table 1. Other load calculation methods (e.g. ACCA, SMACNA) are acceptable provided that the method is ASHRAE-based. When submitting load calculations of this type, the designer must accompany the load calculations with a written affidavit certifying that the method used is ASHRAE-based. If the designer is unclear as to whether or not the calculation method is ASHRAE-based, the vendor or organization providing the calculation method should be contacted to verify that the method is derived from ASHRAE. For systems serving healthcare facilities, the method in the California Mechanical Code shall be used.
2. Indoor design conditions of temperature and relative humidity for general comfort applications are not explicitly defined. Designers are allowed to use any temperature conditions within the "comfort envelope" defined by ANSI/ASHRAE 55-1992 or the 2017 ASHRAE Handbook, Fundamentals Volume. Winter humidification or summer dehumidification is not required. For

systems serving healthcare facilities, the method in Section 320.00 of the California Mechanical Code shall be used.

3. Outdoor design conditions shall be selected from Reference Joint Appendix JA2, which is based on data from the ASHRAE Climatic Data for Region X, for the following design conditions:
   a. Heating design temperatures shall be no lower than the temperature listed in the Heating Winter Median of Extremes value.
   b. Cooling design temperatures shall be no greater than the 0.5 percent Cooling Dry Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet Bulb values.
   c. Cooling design temperatures for cooling towers shall be no greater than the 0.5 percent cooling design wet bulb values.

   For systems serving healthcare facilities, the method in Section 320.0 of the California Mechanical Code shall be used.
4. Outdoor air ventilation loads must be calculated using the ventilation rates required in Section 4.3.
5. Envelope heating and cooling loads must be calculated using envelope characteristics including square footage, thermal conductance, solar heat gain coefficient or shading coefficient and air leakage, consistent with the proposed design.
6. Lighting heating or cooling loads shall be based on actual design lighting levels or power densities consistent with Chapter 5.
7. People sensible and latent gains must be based on the expected occupant density of the building and occupant activities as determined under Section 4.3. If ventilation requirements are based on a cfm/person basis, then people loads must be based on the same number of people as ventilation. Sensible and latent gains must be selected for the expected activities as listed in 2017 ASHRAE Handbook, Fundamentals Volume, Chapter 18.
8. Loads caused by a process shall be based on actual information (not speculative) on the intended use of the building.
9. Miscellaneous equipment loads include such things as duct losses, process loads and infiltration and shall be calculated using design data compiled from one or more of the following sources:
   a. Actual information based on the intended use of the building;
   b. Published data from manufacturer’s technical publications or from technical societies (such as the ASHRAE Handbook, HVAC Applications Volume); or
   c. Other data based on the designer’s experience of expected loads and occupancy patterns.
10. Internal heat gains may be ignored for heating load calculations.
11. A safety factor of up to 10 percent may be applied to design loads to account for unexpected loads or changes in space usage.

12. Other loads such as warm-up or cool-down shall be calculated using one of the following methods:
    a. A method using principles based on the heat capacity of the building and its contents, the degree of setback, and desired recovery time
    b. The steady state design loads may be increased by no more than 30 percent for heating and 10 percent for cooling. The steady state load may include a safety factor of up to 10 percent as discussed above in Item 11.
13. The combination of safety factor and other loads allows design cooling loads to be increased by up to 21 percent (1.10 safety x 1.10 other), and heating loads by up to 43 percent (1.10 safety x 1.30 other).

Example 4-44

Question

Do the sizing requirements restrict the size of duct work, coils, filter banks, etc. in a built-up system?

Answer

No. The intent of the Energy Standards is to limit the size of equipment, which if oversized will consume more energy on an annual basis. Coils with larger face areas will usually have lower pressure drops than otherwise and may also allow the chilled water temperature to be higher, both of which may result in a decrease in energy usage. Larger filter banks will also usually save energy. Larger duct work will have lower static pressure losses, which may save energy, depending on the duct's location, length, and degree of insulation.

Oversizing fans, on the other hand, may or may not improve energy performance. An oversized airfoil fan with inlet vanes will not usually save energy, as the part-load characteristics of this device are poor. But the same fan with a variable frequency drive may save energy. Controls are also an important part of any system design.

The relationship between various energy consuming components may be complex and is left to the designer's professional judgment. When components are oversized, it must be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the enforcement agency that energy usage will not increase.

4.6.2.3 Fan Power Consumption

§140.4(c)

Maximum fan power is regulated in individual fan systems where the total power of the supply (including fan-powered terminal units), return and exhaust fans exceeds 5 hp at design conditions (see Section 4.10 for definitions). A system consists of only the components that must function together to deliver air to a given area; fans that can operate independently of each other comprise separate systems. Included are all fans associated with moving air from a given space-conditioning system to the conditioned spaces and back to the source, or to exhaust air to the outdoors.

The 5 hp total criteria apply to:

1. All supply and return fans within the space-conditioning system that operate at peak load conditions.
2. All exhaust fans at the system level that operate at peak load conditions. Exhaust fans associated with economizers are not counted, provided they do not operate at peak conditions.

3. Fan-powered VAV boxes, if these fans run during the cooling peak. This is always the case for fans in series type boxes. Fans in parallel boxes may be ignored if they are controlled to operate only when zone heating is required, are normally off during the cooling peak, and there is no design heating load, or they are not used during design heating operation.
4. Elevator equipment room exhausts (or other exhausts that draw air from a conditioned space) through an otherwise unconditioned space, to the outdoors.

The criteria are applied individually to each space-conditioning system. In buildings having multiple space-conditioning systems, the criteria apply only to the systems having fans whose total demand exceeds 5 hp.

Fans not directly associated with moving conditioned air to or from the space-conditioning system, or fans associated with a process within the building, or fan systems serving a healthcare facility are not included

For the purposes of the 5 hp criteria, horsepower is the brake horsepower as listed by the manufacturer for the design conditions, plus any losses associated with the drive, including belt losses or variable frequency drive losses. If the brake horsepower is not known, then the nameplate horsepower should be used.

If drive losses are not known, the designer may assume that direct drive efficiencies are 1.0, and belt drives are 0.97. Variable speed drive efficiency should be taken from the manufacturer's literature; if it includes a belt drive, it should be multiplied by 0.97.

$$\text{Fan Adjustment } = 1 - \left(\frac{SPa - 1}{SPf}\right)$$

The fan power limit can be determined in either of two ways:

Option 1 specifies the maximum nameplate power. This option is simple to apply but does not consider special filter requirements, heat recovery devices, or other features that would increase the pressure drop across the fans, and thus increase fan power.

Option 2 specifies the limit in terms of maximum input power at the fan shaft and includes adjustments to account for special filtering (or other devices) in the airstream that increase the static pressure the fan must overcome.

With both options, the power limit applies to all fans that operate at peak design conditions, including primary supply fans, return fans, exhaust fans, and series-type fan-powered VAV boxes. Parallel-type fan-powered VAV boxes typically do not operate at fan system design conditions and would not be included. Different limits apply to the fans in constant-volume and variable-volume systems. Single zone VAV systems use the constant volume criteria.

Option 1

The limit is placed on the fan system motor nameplate power. The limit depends on whether the fan system is a constant-volume or a variable-volume fan system. The limit for constant-volume fan systems is 0.0011 times the supply cubic feet per minute (cfm). The limit for variable-volume fan systems is 0.0015 times the supply volume (in cfm).

$$\mathrm{hp} \leq \mathrm{CFM}_s \times 0.0011 \quad \text{(Constant volume systems)}$$

$$\mathrm{hp} \leq \mathrm{CFM}_s \times 0.0015 \quad \text{(Variable volume systems)}$$

Where:

CFM_s = the maximum design supply airflow rate to conditioned spaces served by the system in cubic feet per minute

Option 2

The limit is placed on the input power at the fan shaft instead of the nameplate power. This method is slightly more complicated but offers more flexibility for fan systems with special filtration requirements, or other features that increase static pressure. The input power of the proposed design fan depends on the design airflow (cfm), the static pressure that the fan has to work against, and the efficiency of the fan. Because the limit is applied at the fan shaft, the efficiency of the motor or the VSD is not considered. For a given fan, the input power at the shaft in given by the following equations:

$$\mathrm{bhp}_i = \frac{\mathrm{CFM}_i \times \mathrm{PD}_i}{6356 \times \eta_i}$$

Where:

PD_i = the pressure drop across the *i*th individual fan

bhp_i = the input power of the *i*th individual fan

CFM_i = the airflow rate of the *i*th fan at design conditions

η_i = the efficiency of the *i*th individual fan

The total input power for the entire fan system is the sum of the input power of each of the fans that operate at peak design conditions and is explained by the following equation:

$$\mathrm{bhp}_{Total} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \mathrm{bhp}_i$$

Where:

bhp_{Total} = the total input power for the fan system

bhp_i = the input power of the *i*th individual fan

The maximum input power permitted by the standard is explained by the following equations for constant-volume and variable-volume systems. The first part of the equation denotes the basic allowance for input power. The second part of the equation denotes additional input power allowed for special filtration or devices listed in Table 4-21. The additional power for these devices is based on the flow rate of air through the device, not the total supply air flow rate.

$$\mathrm{bhp} \leq \mathrm{CFM}_s \times 0.0094 + \sum \frac{\mathrm{CFM}_i \times \mathrm{PD}_i}{4131} \quad \text{(Constant volume systems)}$$

$$\mathrm{bhp} \leq \mathrm{CFM}_s \times 0.0013 + \sum \frac{\mathrm{CFM}_i \times \mathrm{PD}_i}{4131} \quad \text{(Variable volume systems)}$$

Where:

CFM_s = the maximum design supply airflow rate to conditioned spaces served by the system in cubic feet per minute

PD_i = the pressure drops across the *i*th individual fan

bhp_i = the input power of the *i*th individual fan

CFM_i = the airflow rate of the *i*th fan at design conditions

4.6.2.4 Pressure Drop Adjustment Devices

The types of devices listed in Table 4-22 that qualify for additional fan power are as follows:

1. **Return or exhaust systems required by code or accreditation standards to be fully ducted, or systems required to maintain air pressure differentials between adjacent rooms.** The basic input power allowance is based on the assumption that return air passes through an open plenum on its way back to the fan system. For systems where all of the return air is ducted back to the return, an additional pressure drop allowance of 0.5 inches of water is allowed. This credit may not be applied for air systems that have a mixture of ducted and non-ducted return.
2. **Return and/or exhaust airflow control devices.** Some types of spaces, such as laboratories, test rooms, and operating rooms, require that an airflow control device be provided at both the supply air delivery point and at the exhaust. The exhaust airflow control device is typically modulated to maintain a negative or positive space pressure relative to surrounding spaces. An additional pressure drop and associated input power adjustment are permitted when this type of device is installed. The credit may be taken when some spaces served by an air handler have exhaust airflow devices and other spaces do not. However, the credit is taken only for the cfm of air that is delivered to spaces with a qualifying exhaust airflow device.
3. **Exhaust filters, scrubbers, or other exhaust treatment.** Some applications require the air leaving the building be filtered to remove dust or contaminants. Exhaust air filters are also associated with some types of heat recovery systems, such as run-around coils. In this application, the purpose of the

filters is to help keep the coils clean, which is necessary to maintain the effectiveness of the heat recovery system. When such devices are specified and installed, the pressure drop of the device at the fan system design condition may be included as a credit. When calculating the additional input power, only consider the volume of air that is passing through the device under fan system design conditions.

4. **Particulate filtration credit: MERV 16 and greater and electronically enhanced filters.** The primary purpose of filters is to keep the fans, coils, and ducts clean, and to reduce maintenance costs. A secondary purpose is to improve indoor air quality. MERV ratings are used as the basis of this credit. These ratings indicate the amount of particulate removed from the airstream. A higher MERV rating is more efficient and removes more material. The credit for filters with a MERV rating of 16 and greater and all electronically enhanced filters is based on two times the clean pressure drop of the filter at fan system design conditions. These clean pressure drop data are taken from manufacturers' literature.
5. **Carbon and other gas-phase air cleaners.** For carbon and other gas-phase air cleaners, additional input power is based on the rated clean pressure drop of the air-cleaning device at fan system design conditions.
6. **Biosafety cabinet.** If the device is listed as a biosafety cabinet, you can use this credit.
7. **Energy recovery device.** Energy recovery devices exchange heat between the outside air intake stream and the exhaust airstream. There are two common types of heat recovery devices: heat wheels and air-to-air heat exchangers. Both increase the pressure drop and require a system with a larger input power. The fan power allowance for the energy recovery ventilator is determined by the equations in Option 2 and the adjustment factor from Table 4-22. The adjustment factor is a function of the enthalpy recovery ratio. This is intended to encourage designers to select energy recovery devices that have low pressure drops and high enthalpy recovery ratios, and thus provide a net energy reduction. This allows systems that have trouble meeting the fan power limit to gain a higher fan power allowance — by using larger energy recovery devices with higher enthalpy recovery ratios.
8. **Coil runaround loop.** The coil runaround loop is a form of energy recovery device that uses separate coils in the exhaust and outdoor air intakes with a pump in between. The credit is to account for the increased air pressure of these two coils.
9. **Exhaust systems that serve fume hoods.** Exhaust systems that serve fume hoods get an additional 0.35 inches of water credit to account for the pressure through the fume hood, ductwork, and zone valve or balancing devices. This credit applies to the exhaust fans only.

Table 4-22 Fan Power Limitation Pressure Drop Adjustment

Device	**Adjustment**
Credits	
Return or exhaust systems required by code or accreditation standards to be fully ducted, or systems required to maintain air pressure differentials between adjacent rooms	0.5 inches of water
Return and/or exhaust airflow control devices	0.5 inches of water
Exhaust filters, scrubbers, or other exhaust treatment	The pressure drop of device calculated at fan system design condition
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 16 and greater and electronically enhanced filters	Pressure drop calculated at two times the clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition
Carbon and other gas-phase air cleaners	Clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition
Biosafety cabinet	Pressure drop of device at fan system design condition
Energy recovery device, other than coil runaround loop	For each airstream [(2.2 x enthalpy recovery ratio) – 0.5] inches of water
Coil runaround loop	0.6 inches of water for each airstream
Exhaust system serving fume hoods	0.35 inches of water

Example 4-45

Question

A VAV reheat system serves a low-rise office building. The building is served by one VAV packaged rooftop unit with a 10 hp supply fan with a VSD. Four parallel fan-powered VAV terminal units are used on north-facing perimeter offices for heating. Two series fan-powered VAV boxes, each with a third1/3 hp fan with an electronically commutated motor, serve two interior conference rooms.

The space also uses a local exhaust fan for each of the four bathrooms. Fans for the system are listed below. Fan performance is as described in the table below.

Is this system in compliance with Section 140.4(c)?

Quantity	Fan Service	Design cfm, each	bhp	Nameplate Motor, hp
1	Supply fan with variable-speed drive	12,000	8.7	10
2	Condenser fans	9,300	0.7	1.0
1	Return fan	11,000	4.2	5.0
4	Bathroom exhaust fans	350	0.16	1/5
4	Parallel fan-powered VAV boxes	400	0.08	1/5
2	Series fan-powered VAV boxes	600	0.12	1/3

Answer

First, determine which fans to include in the nameplate fan system power calculation:

- The supply and return fans are clearly included in the fan power calculation.
- The condenser fans are not included because they circulate outdoor air and do not affect the conditioned air supplied to the space.
- The toilet exhaust fans are included because they exhaust from a conditioned space.
- The parallel fan powered VAV boxes are not included in the fan power calculation because they operate in heating mode when the supply fan is not operating at design conditions.
- The series fan-powered boxes run continuously and are included in the fan power calculation.

The total nameplate power is 15.7 bhp, as shown below.

Nameplate Power = 10 + 5 + (4 x 1/5) + (2 × 1/3) = 16.5 hp

The total supply air delivered from the air handler is 12,000 cfm, and the allowed nameplate power for a variable-air-volume system is 18 hp as shown below.

Nameplate Powermax = 12,000 × 0.0015 = 18.0 hp

The total nameplate power of 16.5 hp is less than the allowed 18.0 hp, so the fan system complies with the standard. If the nameplate power exceeded the allowable limit, the system input power can be checked for compliance

Example 4-46

Question

A conventional VAV system serves an office building. Fan performance is as described in the table below. Is the system in compliance with Section 140.4(c)?

Quantity	Fan Service	Design cfm, each	bhp	Nameplate Motor hp
2	Supply fans with variable-speed drives	75,000	70.5	75 high efficiency
4	Economizer relief fans	32,000	3.5	5
1	Toilet exhaust	6,750	2.7	3 high efficiency
1	Elevator machine room exhaust fan	5,000	Unknown	3/4
2	Cooling tower exhaust fans	Unknown	Unknown	15
15	Conference room exhaust fans	500	240 W	—
120	Series-type fan-powered mixing boxes	1,300 (average)	Unknown	1/3

Answer

First, determine which fans to include in the fan power calculation:

- Supply fans are included.
- The economizer relief fans are not included because they will not operate at peak cooling design conditions. Had return fans been used, they would have to be included in the calculation.
- The toilet exhaust fan is included because it exhausts conditioned air from the building rather than have it returned to the supply fan, and it operates at peak cooling conditions.
- The elevator exhaust fan is not part of the system because it is assumed, in this case, that the makeup air to the elevator room is from the outdoors rather than from the building. Had makeup air been transferred from the conditioned space; the fan would have been included.
- The cooling tower fans operate at design conditions, but they also are not part of the system because they circulate only outdoor air. Although the cooling tower fan power does not contribute to the system fan power, it is required to meet the minimum efficiency requirements in Table 110.2-G.
- The conference room exhaust fans are assumed to be transfer fans. They simply exhaust air from the room and discharge it to the ceiling plenum. Because this air is not exhausted to the outdoors, the fans are not included.
- The series-type fan-powered VAV boxes are included because they assist in supplying air to the conditioned space and operate at design cooling conditions. If the boxes were the parallel type, they would not be included because they would not operate at design cooling conditions.

Second, using Option 1, add up the nameplate power (not input power) of the eligible fans. For this example, the fans that are included and their motor power requirements are as follows:

Fan Service	Quantity	Motor hp, each	Total hp
Supply fans	2	75	150
Toilet exhaust fan	1	3	3
Fan-powered VAV boxes	120	1/3	40
Total fan system power			193

Third, determine the supply air rate. This is the total airflow rate supplied through the heating or cooling source, which in this case is equal to the total of the two supply fan airflow rates, 2 × 75,000 = 150,000 cfm. The supply rate is not the total of the fan powered VAV box airflow rates; although this is the ultimate supply air rate to the conditioned space, this entire airflow does not flow through the heating or cooling source. The airflow rate from the exhaust fan is also not included in the supply air rate for the same reason.

Fourth, determine the criteria from Table 140.4-A. The series fan powered VAV boxes supply a constant flow of air to the conditioned space, but the primary airflow, the airflow through the cooling source, varies as a function of load which meets the definition of a VAV system. Using Option 1, the maximum nameplate power for the system is 225 hp as shown below.

hp = CFMs × 0.0015

hp = 150,000 × 0.0015 = 225 hp

Fifth, compare the allowable fan system power with the proposed power. The actual fan system nameplate power of 193 hp is less than the 225 hp limit, so this system complies. If the system did not comply, the designer could consider using larger ducts to reduce static pressure or shifting to parallel fan powered VAV boxes.

Example 4-47

Question

A hotel/motel building has floor-by-floor supply air-handling units but central toilet exhaust fans and minimum ventilation supply fans. How is the standard applied to this system?

Answer

Each air handler counts as a fan system. The energy of the central toilet exhaust and ventilation fans must be allocated to each air handler on a cfm-weighted basis. For instance, if one floor receives 2000 cfm of outdoor air, and the outdoor air fan supplies a total of 10,000 cfm with a 5 hp motor, 20 percent (2000/10,000 cfm) of the fan power (1 hp) is added to the fan power for the floor’s fan system. The airflow rates from the exhaust and ventilation fans must be included in the fan power calculation because these §140.4(c) requires to add exhaust fan power.

Example 4-48

Question

A wing of an elementary school building is served by eight water-source heat pumps, each equipped with a 3/4 hp fan motor and serving a single classroom. Ventilation air is supplied directly to each classroom by a dedicated outdoor-air system. Each classroom requires 500 cfm of outdoor air, so the system delivers the total of 4000 cfm of conditioned outdoor air using a 5 hp fan. Does this system need to comply with Section 140.4(c)?

Answer

Each water-source heat pump is a separate fan system because each has a separate cooling and heating source. The power of the dedicated outdoor-air system fan must be allocated to each heat pump on a cfm-weighted basis. For each classroom, 12.5 percent (500/4000 cfm) of the fan power (12.5 percent of 5 hp = 0.625 hp) is added to the fan power for the heat pump (0.75 + 0.625 = 1.375 hp). In this instance, even with the dedicated outdoor-air system fan allocated, each heat-pump fan system is less than the 5 hp threshold in Section 140.4(c), so the system does not need to comply with Section 140.4(c).

Example 4-49

Question

A variable-volume air handler serving a lab system has a fan system design supply airflow of 10,000 cfm. The supply fan has a 20 hp (nameplate) supply fan motor that operates at an input power of 13.9 bhp. The exhaust fan has a five hp motor that operates at an input power of 3.20 bhp. Flow control devices in the exhaust are used to maintain pressure relationships between spaces served by the system.

The air handler uses MERV 13 filters and exhaust air is completely ducted. The system uses outdoor air and has a run-around heat recovery system with coils in the supply and exhaust airstreams, each with 0.4 in. of water pressure drop at design airflow.

Does this fan system comply with the fan power requirements in Section 140.4(c)?

Answer

For this system, Option 2 is required in order to consider the additional pressure drop of the return air ducts, airflow control devices, and the heat recovery device. MERV 13 filters are required per Section 120.1(c) 1B so no fan credit is awarded. From Table 140.4-A, the allowable system input power for the system is:

bhp = CFMs × 0.0013 + A

= 10,000 × 0.0013 + A = 13.0 + A

From Table 140.4-B, the pressure drop adjustment for the pressure drop adjustment for the fully ducted return (DR) is 0.5 in. of water, the pressure drop adjustment for the exhaust flow control device (FC) is 0.5 in. of water, and the pressure drop adjustment for a run-around loop heat recovery device is 0.6 in. of water per airstream. The airflow through all of these devices is 10,000 cfm, so the additional input power that is allowed is 5.33 bhp, as calculated below.

A = [CFMDR × PDDR + CFMFC × PDFC + 2 × (CFMHX × PDHX)] / 4,131

A = [10,000 × 0.5 + 10,000 × 0.5 + 2 × (10,000 × 0.6)] / 4131 = 5.33 bhp

The total allowed input power is 13.0 bhp plus 5.33 bhp, or 18.3 bhp, which is greater than the fan system input power of 13.9 bhp plus 3.20 bhp, or 17.1 bhp. Therefore, the system meets the standard’s requirements.

4.6.2.5 Fractional HVAC Motors for Fans

§140.4(c)4

HVAC fan motors that are one hp or less and 1/12 hp or greater shall be electronically commutated motors or shall have a minimum motor efficiency of 70 percent when rated in accordance with the National Electric Manufacturers Association (NEMA) Standard MG 1-2006 at full-load rating conditions. These motors shall also have the means to adjust motor speed for either balancing or remote control. Belt-driven fans may use sheave adjustments for airflow balancing in lieu of a varying motor speed.

This requirement can be met with either electronically commutated motors or brushless direct current (DC) motors. These motors have higher efficiency than permanent split capacitor (PSC) motors and inherently have speed control that can be used for VAV operation or balancing.

This requirement includes fan-powered terminal units, fan-coil units, exhaust fans, transfer fans, and supply fans. There are three exceptions to this requirement:

1. Motors in fan-coil units and terminal units that operate only when providing heating to the space served. This includes parallel style fan-powered VAV boxes and heating only fan-coils.
2. Motors that are part of space conditioning equipment certified under §110.1 or §110.2. This includes supply fans, condenser fans, ventilation fans for boilers, and other fans that are part of equipment that is rated as a whole.
3. Motors that are part of space conditioning serving healthcare facilities.

4.6.2.6 Electric-Resistance Heating

§140.4(g), §141.0

The Energy Standards strongly discourage the use of electric-resistance space heat. Electric-resistance space heat is not allowed in the prescriptive approach except where:

1. Site-recovered or site-solar energy provides at least 60 percent of the annual heating energy requirements.
2. A heat pump is supplemented by an electric-resistance heating system, and the heating capacity of the heat pump is more than 75 percent of the design heating load at the design outdoor temperature (determined in accordance with the Energy Standards).
3. The total capacity of all electric-resistance heating systems serving the entire building is less than 10 percent of the total design output capacity of all heating equipment serving the entire building.
4. The total capacity of all electric-resistance heating systems serving the building, excluding those that supplement a heat pump, is no more than 3 kW.
5. An electric-resistance heating system serves an entire building that:
   a. Is not a high-rise residential or hotel/motel building.
   b. Has a conditioned floor area no greater than 5,000 sq ft.
   c. Has no mechanical cooling.
   d. Is in an area where natural gas is not currently available and an extension of a natural gas system is impractical, as determined by the natural gas utility.
6. The existing mechanical systems use electric reheat (when adding VAV boxes) added capacity cannot exceed 20 percent of the existing installed electric capacity, under any one permit application in an alteration.
7. The existing VAV system with electric reheat is being expanded, the added capacity cannot exceed 50 percent of the existing installed electric reheat capacity under any one permit in an addition.
8. Heating systems serve as emergency backup to gas heating equipment.

The Energy Standards allow a small amount of electric-resistance heat to be used for local space heating or reheating (provided reheat is in accordance with these regulations).

Example 4-50

Question

If a heat pump is used to condition a building having a design heating load of 100,000 Btu/h at 35 degrees F, what are the sizing requirements for the compressor and heating coils?

Answer

The compressor must be sized to provide at least 75 percent of the heating load at the design heating conditions, or 75,000 Btu/h at 35 degrees F. The Energy Standards do not address the size of the resistance heating coils. Normally, they will be sized based on heating requirements during defrost.

4.6.2.7 Cooling Tower Flow Turndown

§140.4(h)3

The Energy Standards require that open cooling towers with multiple condenser water pumps be designed so that all cells can be run in parallel with the larger of the flow that is produced by the smallest pump or 50 percent of the design flow for the cell.

In a large plant at low load operation, not all the cells are typically run at once. This is allowed in the Energy Standards.

Cooling towers are very efficient at unloading the fan energy drops off as the cube of the airflow. It is always more efficient to run the water through as many cells as possible- two fans at half speed use less than one third of the energy of one fan at full speed for the same load. Unfortunately, there is a limitation with flow on towers. The flow must be sufficient to provide full coverage of the fill. If the nozzles do not fully wet the fill, air will go through the dry spots providing no cooling benefit and cause the water at the edge of the dry spot to flash evaporate, depositing dissolved solids on the fill.

Fortunately, the cooling tower manufacturers do offer low-flow nozzles (and weirs on basin type towers) to provide better flow turndown. This typically only costs $100 to $150 per tower cell. As low-flow nozzles can eliminate the need for a tower isolation control point, this option provides energy savings at a reduced first cost.

Example 4-51

Question

If a large central plant has five equally sized chillers and five equally sized cooling tower cells do all of the cooling tower cells need to operate when only one chiller is on-line?

Answer

No. You would probably only run three cells with one chiller. The cooling tower cells must be designed to run at 33 percent of their nominal design flow. With two to five chillers running, you would run all of the cells of the cooling tower. With only one chiller running you would run three cells. In each case, you would need to keep the tower flow above the minimum that it was designed for.

4.6.2.8 Centrifugal Fan Limitation

§140.4(h)4

Open cooling towers with a combined rated capacity of 900 gpm and greater are prohibited from using centrifugal fans. The 95-degree F condenser water return, 85-degree F condenser water supply and 75-degree F outdoor wet-bulb temperature are test conditions for determining the rated flow capacity in gpm. Centrifugal fans use approximately twice the energy as propeller fans for the same duty. There are a couple of exceptions to this requirement:

1. Cooling towers that are ducted (inlet or discharge) or have an external sound trap that requires external static pressure capability.

2. Cooling towers that meet the energy efficiency requirement for propeller fan towers in Table 4-7.

Centrifugal fans may be used on closed circuit fluid coolers.

As with all prescriptive requirements centrifugal fan cooling towers may be used when complying with the performance method. The budget building will be modeled using propeller towers.

4.6.2.9 Cooling Tower Efficiency

§140.4(h)5

Prescriptively, axial fan open-circuit cooling towers with a combined rated capacity of 900 gpm or greater must achieve a rated efficiency no less than 60 gpm/hp. This efficiency is rated at specific temperature conditions which are 95-degree F condenser water return; 85-degree F condenser water supply; and 75-degree F outdoor wet-bulb temperature as listed in Table 4-7. There are a couple of exceptions to this requirement:

1. Cooling towers which are installed as a replacement to an existing chilled water plant, if the tower is located on an existing roof or inside an existing building.
2. Cooling towers that are serving buildings in Climate Zones 1 or 16.

As with all prescriptive requirements, axial-fan open-circuit cooling towers with a capacity of 900 gpm or larger and less than 60 gpm/hp may be used when complying with the performance method. The towers must still comply with the mandatory minimum efficiency rating of 42.1 gpm/hp as listed in Table 4-7.

4.6.2.10 Chiller Efficiency

§140.4(i)

In Table 4-4, there are two sets of efficiency for almost every size and type of chiller. Path A represents fixed speed compressors and Path B represents variable speed compressors. For each path, there are two efficiency requirements: a full load efficiency and an integrated part-load efficiency. Path A typically has a higher full load efficiency and a lower part-load efficiency than Path B. In all California climates, the cooling load varies enough to justify the added cost for a Path B chiller. This is a prescriptive requirement, so Path B is used in the base case model in the performance method.

There are a number of exceptions provided to this requirement:

1. Chillers with an electrical service of greater than 600 volts. This is due to the fact that the cost of a VSD is much higher on medium voltage service.
2. Chillers attached to a heat recovery system with a design heat recovery capacity greater than 40 percent of the chiller's design cooling capacity. Heat recovery typically requires operation at higher lifts and compressor speeds.
3. Chillers used to charge thermal energy storage systems with a charging temperature of less than 40 degrees F. This again requires a high lift operation for chillers.

4. In a building with more than three chillers only three are required to meet the Path B efficiencies.

4.6.2.11 Limitation on Air Cooled Chillers

§140.4(j) and §141.0

New central cooling plants and cooling plant expansions will be limited on the use of air-cooled chillers. For both types the limit is 300 tons per plant.

In the studies provided to support this requirement, air cooled chillers always provided a higher life cycle cost than water-cooled chillers even accounting for the water and chemical treatment costs.

Exceptions to this requirement:

1. Where the water quality at the building site fails to meet manufacturer's specifications for the use of water-cooled chillers.

   This exception recognizes that some parts of the state have exceptionally high quantities of dissolved solids that could foul systems or cause excessive chemical treatment or blow down.

2. Chillers that are used to charge a thermal energy storage system with a design temperature of less than 40 degrees F.

   This addresses the fact that air-cooled chillers can operate very efficiently at low ambient air temperatures. Since thermal energy storage systems operate for long hours at night, these systems may be as efficient as a water-cooled plant. The chiller must be provided with head pressure controls to achieve these savings.

3. Air cooled chillers with minimum efficiencies approved by the Energy Commission pursuant to §10-109(d).

   This exception was provided in the event that an exceptionally high efficiency air cooled chiller was developed. None of the high-efficiency air-cooled chillers currently evaluated are as efficient as water-cooled systems using the lowest chiller efficiency allowed by §110.2.

4. Systems serving healthcare facilities.

4.6.2.12 Exhaust System Transfer Air

§140.4(o)

The standard prescriptively requires the use of transfer air for exhaust air makeup in most cases. The purpose is to avoid supply air that requires increased outdoor air intake, which would require conditioning, for exhaust makeup when return or relief air from neighboring spaces can be used instead. The requirement limits the supply of conditioned air to not exceed the larger of: 1.) the supply flow required for space heating or space cooling, 2.) the required ventilation rate, or 3.) the exhaust flow, minus the available transfer air from conditioned spaces or plenums on the same floor and within 15 ft and not in different smoke or fire compartments. Available transfer air does not include air required to maintain pressurization and air that cannot be transferred based on-air class as defined by in §120.1.

There are a few exceptions to this requirement:

1. Biosafety laboratories classified Level 3 or higher
2. Vivarium spaces
3. Spaces that are required by applicable codes and standards to be maintained at positive pressure relative to adjacent spaces. For spaces taking this exception, any transferable air that is not directly transferred shall be made available to the associated air-handling unit and shall be used whenever economizer or other options do not save more energy.
4. Spaces where the demand for transfer air may exceed the available transfer airflow rate and where the spaces have a required negative pressure relationship. For spaces taking this exception, any transferable air that is not directly transferred shall be made available to the associated air-handling unit and shall be used whenever economizer or other options do not save more energy.
5. Healthcare facilities

A compliant example would be a space with a restroom with 300 cfm of exhaust. The makeup air would consist of 60 cfm of supply air and 240 cfm of transfer air from an adjacent ceiling return air plenum. The amount of air required for the space is 60 cfm for heating and cooling and the rest of the makeup air is transferred from the return air plenum.

A non-compliant example would be if the same space had a constant air volume box with reheat supplying all of the makeup air. The reheat would be needed to prevent the space from being overcooled. Since there is transfer air available in the adjacent plenum, the maximum allowed supply air would be only what’s required for space heating or cooling, which would be 60 cfm.

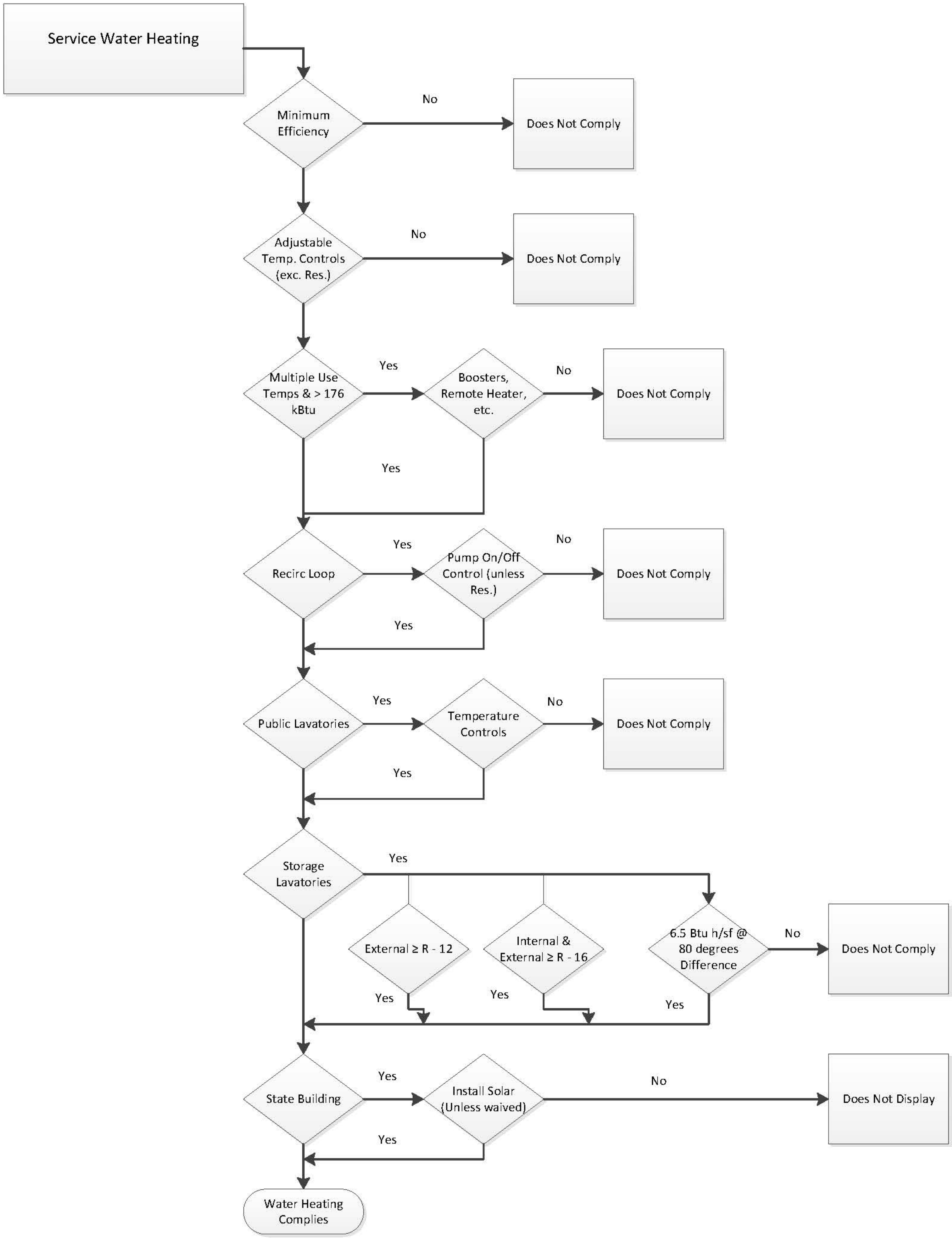
4.7 Water Heating Requirements

§140.5

All of the requirements for service hot water that apply to nonresidential occupancies are mandatory measures. There are additional requirements for high-rise residential buildings, hotels and motels, which must also comply with the Residential Energy Standards §150.1(c)8, described below, as well as in the Residential Compliance Manual.

There are no acceptance requirements for water heating systems or equipment. However, a high-rise residential building, hotel and motel water heating system must meet the distribution system eligibility criteria for that portion of the system that is applicable.

Figure 4-30: Service Water Heating Flowchart



4.7.1 Service Water Systems Mandatory Requirements

4.7.1.1 Efficiency and Control

§110.3(a)

Any service water heating equipment must have integral automatic temperature controls that allow the temperature to be adjusted from the lowest to the highest allowed temperature settings for the intended use as listed in Table 3, Chapter 50 of the ASHRAE Handbook, HVAC Applications Volume.

Service water heaters installed in residential occupancies need not meet the temperature control requirement of §110.3(a)1.

4.7.1.2 Multiple Temperature Usage

§110.3(c)1

On systems that have a total capacity greater than 167,000 Btu/h, outlets requiring higher than service water temperatures, as listed in the ASHRAE Handbook, HVAC Applications Volume, shall have separate remote heaters, heat exchangers, or boosters to supply the outlet with the higher temperature. This requires the primary water heating system to supply water at the lowest temperature required by any of the demands served for service water heating. All other demands requiring higher temperatures should be served by separate systems, or by boosters that raise the temperature of the primary supply.

Systems covered by California Plumbing Code Section 613.0 shall instead follow the requirements of that section.

4.7.1.3 Controls for Hot Water Distribution Systems

§110.3(c)2

Service hot water systems with a circulating pump or with electrical heat trace shall include a control capable of automatically turning off the system when hot water is not required. Such controls include automatic time switches, interlocks with HVAC time switches, occupancy sensors, and other controls that accomplish the intended purpose.

Systems serving healthcare systems are exempted from this requirement.

4.7.1.4 Storage Tank Insulation

§110.3(c)3

Unfired water heater storage tanks and backup tanks for solar water heating systems must have one of the following:

1. External insulation with an installed R-value of at least R-12.
2. Internal and external insulation with a combined R-value of at least R-16.
3. The heat loss of the tank based on an 80-degree F water-air temperature difference shall be less than 6.5 Btu per hour per sq ft. This corresponds to an effective resistance of R-12.3.

4.7.1.5 Service Water Heaters in State Buildings

§110.3(c)5

High-rise residential buildings constructed by the State of California shall have solar water heating systems. The solar system shall be sized and designed to provide at least 60 percent of the energy needed for service water heating from site solar energy or recovered energy. There is an exception when buildings for which the state architect determines that service water heating is economically or physical infeasible. See the Compliance Options section below for more information about solar water heating systems.

4.7.1.6 Pipe Insulation Thickness

§120.3

There are updated pipe insulation thickness requirements applicable to nonresidential water heating pipes. For pipes with conductivity ranges within those specified in Table 4-23, the nominal pipe diameters grouping ranges have changed, as well as the thickness of insulation required for each pipe diameter range. The table is repeated below for ease of reference:

Table 4-23: Pipe Insulation

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="3">FLUID TEMPERATURE RANGE (°F)</th><th rowspan="3">CONDUCTIVITY RANGE (in Btu-inch per hour per sq ft per °F)</th><th rowspan="3">INSULATION MEAN RATING TEMPERATURE (°F)</th><th colspan="7">NOMINAL PIPE DIAMETER (in inches)</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2">1 and less</th><th colspan="2">1 to <1.5</th><th>1.5 to < 4</th><th>4 to < 8</th><th>8 and larger</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="7">INSULATION THICKNESS REQUIRED (in inches)</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="10">Space heating, hot water systems (steam, steam condensate and hot water) and service water heating systems (recirculating sections, all piping in electric trace tape systems, and the first eight ft of piping from the storage tank for nonrecirculating systems)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Above 350</td><td>0.32-0.34</td><td>250</td><td colspan="2">4.5</td><td colspan="2">5.0</td><td>5.0</td><td>5.0</td><td>5.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>251-350</td><td>0.29-0.31</td><td>200</td><td colspan="2">3.0</td><td colspan="2">4.0</td><td>4.5</td><td>4.5</td><td>4.5</td></tr>
<tr><td>201-250</td><td>0.27-0.30</td><td>150</td><td colspan="2">2.5</td><td colspan="2">2.5</td><td>2.5</td><td>3.0</td><td>3.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>141-200</td><td>0.25-0.29</td><td>125</td><td colspan="2">1.5</td><td colspan="2">1.5</td><td>2.0</td><td>2.0</td><td>2.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>105-140</td><td>0.22-0.28</td><td>100</td><td colspan="2">1.0</td><td colspan="2">1.5</td><td>1.5</td><td>1.5</td><td>1.5</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="10"></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="10">Space cooling systems (chilled water, refrigerant and brine)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3"></td><td>Nonres</td><td>Res</td><td>Nonres</td><td>Res</td><td colspan="3"></td></tr>
<tr><td>40-60</td><td>0.21-0.27</td><td>75</td><td>0.5</td><td>0.75</td><td>0.5</td><td>0.75</td><td>1.0</td><td>1.0</td><td>1.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Below 40</td><td>0.20-0.26</td><td>50</td><td colspan="2">1.0</td><td colspan="2">1.5</td><td>1.5</td><td>1.5</td><td>1.5</td></tr>
</table>

Source: California Energy Commission, Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Table 120.3-A

4.7.1.7 Systems with Recirculation Loops

§110.3(c)4

Service water systems that have central recirculation distribution must include all of the following mandatory features. The intent of these measures is to optimize performance and allow for lower cost of maintenance. These requirements are applicable to nonresidential occupancies as well as high-rise residential and hotel/motel systems.

A. Air Release Valves

§110.3(c)4A

The constant supply of new water and leaks in system piping or components during normal operation of the pump may introduce air into the circulating water. Entrained air in the water can result in a loss of pump head pressure and pumping capacity, which adversely impacts the pumps’ efficiency and life expectancy. Entrained air may also contribute to increased cavitation.

Cavitation is the formation of vapor bubbles in liquid on the low pressure (suction) side of the pump. The vapor bubbles generally condense back to the liquid state after they pass into the higher-pressure side of the pump. Cavitation can contribute to a loss of head pressure and pumping capacity; may produce noise and vibration in the pump; and may result in pump impeller corrosion-all of which impacts the pumps’ efficiency and life expectancy.

Entrained air and cavitation should be minimized by the installation of an air release valve. The air release valve must be located no more than four ft from the inlet of the pump and must be mounted on a vertical riser with a length of at least 12 inches. Alternatively, the pump shall be mounted on a vertical section of the return piping.

B. Recirculation Loop Backflow Prevention

§110.3(c)4B

Temperature and pressure differences in the water throughout a recirculation system can create potentials for backflows. This can result in cooler water from the bottom of the water heater tank and water near the end of the recirculation loop flowing backwards towards the hot water load and reducing the delivered water temperature.

To prevent this from occurring, the Energy Standards require that a check valve or similar device be located between the recirculation pump and the water heating equipment.

C. Equipment for Pump Priming/Pump Isolation Valves

§110.3(c)5C&D

Many systems are allowed to operate until they completely fail due to the difficulty of repair or servicing. Repair labor costs can be reduced significantly by planning ahead and designing for easy pump replacement. Provisions for pump priming and pump isolation valves help reduces maintenance costs.

To meet the pump priming equipment requirement, a hose bib must be installed between the pump and the water heater. In addition, an isolation valve shall be installed between the hose bib and the water heating equipment. This configuration will allow the flow from the water heater to be shut off, allowing the hose bib to be used for bleeding air out of the pump after replacement.

The requirement for the pump isolation valves will allow replacement of the pump without draining a large portion of the system. The isolation valves shall be installed on both sides of the pump. These valves may be part of the flange that attaches the pump to the pipe. One of the isolation valves may be the same isolation valve as in §110.3(c)5C.

D. Connection of Recirculation Lines

§110.3(c)4E

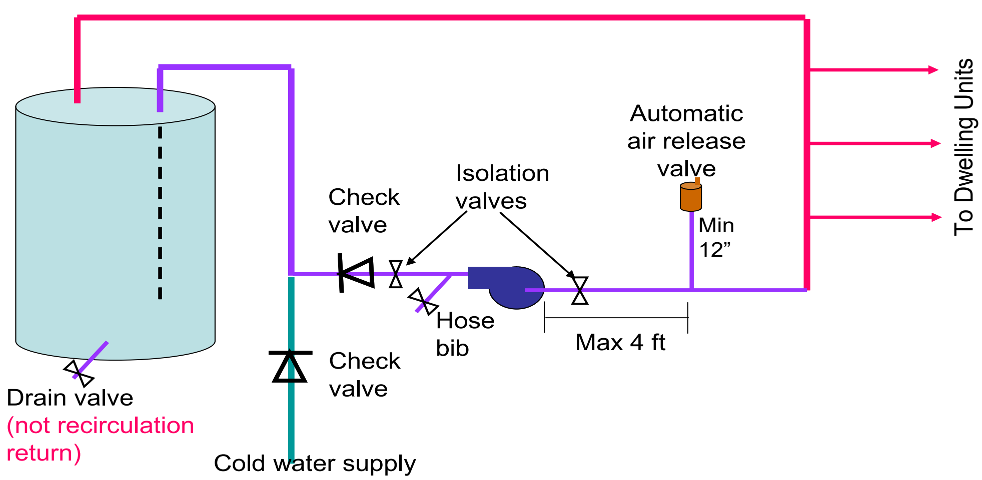
Manufacturer specifications should always be followed to assure optimal performance of the system. The cold-water piping and the recirculation loop piping should never be connected to the hot water storage tank drain port.

E. Backflow Prevention in Cold Water Supply

§110.3(c)4F

The dynamic between the water in the heater and the cold-water supply are similar to those in the recirculation loop. Thermosyphoning can occur on this side of this loop just as it does on the recirculation side of the system. To prevent this, the Energy Standards require a check valve to be installed on the cold-water supply line. The valve should be located between the hot water system and the next closest tee on the cold-water supply line. The system shall comply with the expansion tank requirements as described in the California Plumbing Code Section 608.3.

Figure 4-31: Backflow Prevention



4.7.2 Mandatory Requirements Applicable to High-Rise Residential and Hotel/Motel

In addition to the mandatory requirements listed above, there are mandatory requirements that will apply to water heating systems for hotels, motels, and high-rise residential buildings only. All of these requirements are tied to the mandatory requirements in §150.1(c)8 for residential occupancies. The applicability of the mandatory features listed above will change depending on whether the water heating system has a central system or uses individual water heaters.

4.7.2.1 Storage Tank Insulation Requirements

§150.0(j)1

For unfired supplemental tanks R-12 must be installed if the internal insulation of the unfired tank is less than R-16.

4.7.2.2 Water Piping Insulation Thickness and Conductivity

§150.0(j)2

All domestic hot water system piping conditions listed below, whether buried or not buried, must be insulated. The insulation thickness and conductivity shall be determined from the fluid temperature range and nominal pipe diameter as required by Table 4-23.

- The first five feet of pipe for hot and cold water from the storage tank must be insulated. In the case of a building with a central distribution system this requirement means that the cold supply line to the central water heater must be insulated. For building with central recirculation systems, the hot water supply to each unit must be insulated to meet this requirement and the kitchen piping insulation requirement.
- Any pipe in the distribution system that is three quarters of an inch or larger must be insulated. This includes pipe in the central distribution system and in the distribution, system serving the individual units.
- Any piping that is associated with a recirculation loop must be insulated. If the domestic hot water heater system serving the dwelling unit uses any type of recirculation, insulation of the entire length of the distribution loop is required. Insulation is also required in the case of a dwelling unit with a combined hydronic system that uses any portion of the domestic hot water loop to circulate water for heating. Insulation is not required on the branches or twig serving the point of use.
- All piping from the heating source to a storage tank or between storage tanks must be insulated.
- All hot water piping from the water heater or source of hot water for each dwelling unit to the kitchen must be insulated.
- All piping buried below grade must be insulated. In addition, all piping below grade must be installed in a waterproof and non-crushable casing or sleeve. The internal cross-section or diameter of the casing or sleeve shall be large enough to allow for insulation of the hot water piping. Pre-insulated pipe with an integrated protection sleeve will also meet this requirement.

There are exceptions to the requirements for pipe insulation, as described below:

- In attics and crawlspaces, pipes completely covered with at least four inches of insulation are not required to have pipe insulation. Any section of pipe not covered with at least four inches of insulation must be insulated.
- In walls, all of the requirements must be met for compliance with Quality Insulation Installation (QII) as specified in the Reference Residential Appendix RA3.5. Otherwise the section of pipe not meeting the QII specifications must be insulated.
- The last segment of piping that penetrates walls and delivers hot water to the sink or appliance does not require insulation.
- Piping that penetrates framing members shall not be required to have pipe insulation for the distance of the framing penetration. Piping that penetrates metal framing shall use grommets, plugs, wrapping or other insulating material to assure that no contact is made with the metal framing. Insulation shall butt securely against all framing members.

4.7.3 Prescriptive Requirements Applicable to High-Rise Residential and Hotel/Motel

For water heating recirculation systems for high-rise residential and hotel/motel buildings, the code actually references back to the Residential Prescriptive requirements. The following paragraphs recap these requirements.

4.7.3.1 Solar Water Heating

§150.1(c)8Biii

Solar water heating is prescriptively required for water heating systems serving multiple dwelling units, whether it is a motel/hotel or high-rise multifamily building. The minimum solar savings fraction (SSF) is dependent on the climate zone: 0.20 for CZ 1 through 9, and 0.35 for CZ 10 through 16. A new provision allows a reduced SSF in certain climate zones, if drain water heat recovery devices are installed. The Energy Standards do not limit the solar water heating equipment or system type, as long as they are SRCC certified and meet the orientation, tilt and shading requirement specified in RA 4.4. Installation of a solar water heating system exempts multifamily buildings from needing to set aside a solar zone for future solar PV installation (§110.10(b)1B). The following paragraphs offer some high-level design considerations for multifamily building solar water heating systems.

A high-priority factor for solar water heating system design is component sizing. Proper sizing of the solar collectors and the solar tank ensures that the system take full advantage of the sun's energy while avoiding the problem of overheating. While the issue of freeze protection has been widely explored (development of various solar water heating system types is a reflection of this evolution), the issue of overheating is often not considered as seriously as it should be. This is especially critical for multifamily-sized systems, due to load variability.

To be conservative, the highest SSF requirement called for by the 2019 Energy Standards is 35 percent. Industry standard sizing for an active system is generally 1.5 sq ft collector area per gallon capacity for solar tanks. For more detailed guidance and best practices, there are many publicly available industry design guidelines. Two such resources developed by or in association with government agencies are Building America Best Practices Series: Solar Thermal and Photovoltaic Systems[2], and California Solar Initiative – Thermal: Program Handbook[3]. Because of the new solar water heating requirement and prevalence of recirculation hot water systems in multifamily buildings, it is essential to re-iterate the importance of proper integration between the hot water recirculation system and the solar water heating system. Industry stakeholders recommend the recirculation hot water return to be connected back to the system *downstream* of the solar storage tank. This eliminates the unnecessary wasted energy used to heat up water routed back from the recirculation loop that may have been sitting in the solar water tank if no draw has occurred over a prolonged period of time.

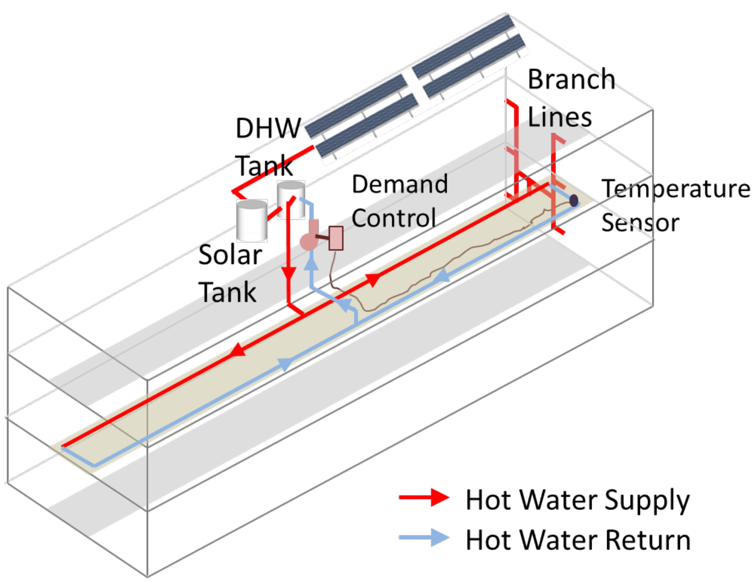
Another design consideration is the layout and placement of collectors and the solar tank. The design should minimize the length of plumbing, and thus reduce pipe surface areas susceptible to heat loss as well as the quantity of piping materials needed for the installation. The distance between collectors and the solar tank should also be as short as practically possible.

4.7.3.2 Dual Recirculation Loop Design

150.1(c)8Bii

A dual-loop design is illustrated in Figure 4-34. In a dual-loop design, each loop serves half of the dwelling units. According to plumbing code requirements, the pipe diameters can be downsized compared to a loop serving all dwelling units. The total pipe surface area is effectively reduced, even though total pipe length is about the same as that of a single-loop design. For appropriate pipe sizing guidelines, refer to the Universal Plumbing Code.

Figure 4-32: Example of a Dual-Loop Recirculation System



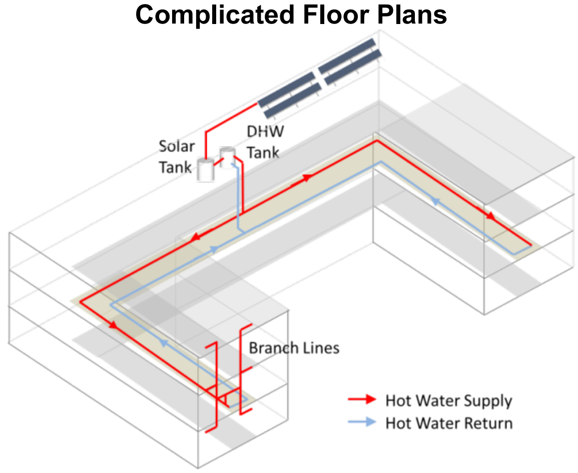
[2] http://apps1.eere.energy.gov/buildings/publications/pdfs/building_america/41085.pdf

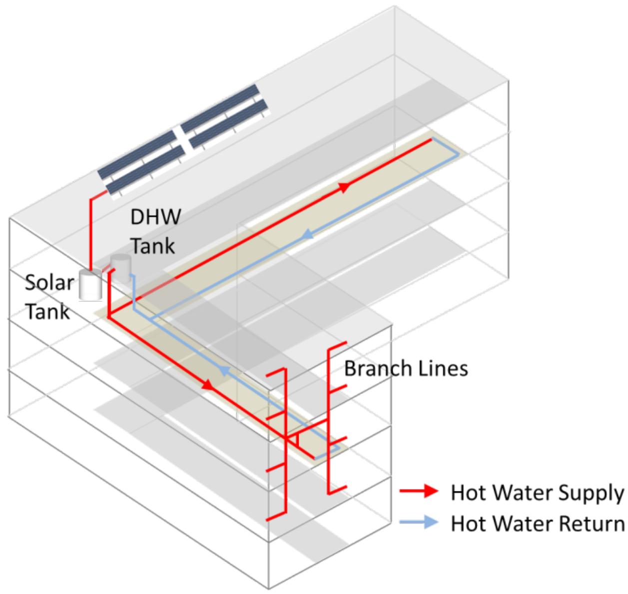
[3] [3] http://www.gosolarcalifornia.ca.gov/documents/CSI-Thermal_Handbook.pdf

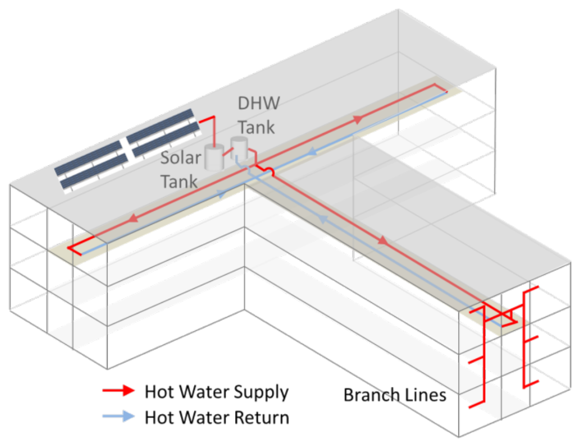
Figure 4-34 provides an example of how to implement dual-loop design in a low-rise multi-family building with a simple layout. In this example, the water heating equipment is located in the middle of the top floor with each recirculation loop serving exactly half of the building. The recirculation loops are located in the middle floor to minimize branch pipe length to each of the dwelling units. Figure 4-34 also illustrates how the solar water heating system and demand control are integrated.

For buildings with complicated layouts, an optimum design for recirculation loops depends on the building geometry. In general, the system should be designed to have each loop serving an equal number of dwelling units in order to minimize pipe sizes. For systems serving buildings with distinct sections, e.g. two wings in an "L" shaped building, it is better to dedicate a separate recirculation loop to each section. Very large buildings and buildings with more than two sections should consider using separate central water heating systems for each section or part of the building. In all cases, a simplified routing of recirculation loops should be used to keep recirculation pipes as short as possible. Figure 4-35 shows examples of dual-loop recirculation system designs in buildings that have complicated floor plans.

Figure 4-33: Examples of Dual-Loop Recirculation System Designs in Buildings That Have Complicated Floor Plans







Location of water heating equipment in the building should be carefully considered to properly implement the dual-loop design. The goal is to keep overall pipe length as short as possible. For example, for buildings that do not have complicated floor plans; the designer should consider locating the water heating equipment at the center of the building footprint rather than at one end of the building which helps to minimize the pipe length needed. If a water heating system serves several distinct building sections, the water heating equipment would preferably nest in between these sections.

With the prescriptive solar water heating requirement in the Energy Standards, it is especially important to consider the integration between the hot water recirculation system and the solar water heating system. Based on feedback from industry stakeholders, most solar water heating systems are only configured to operate as a pre-heater for the primary gas water heating equipment. In other words, recirculation hot water returns are usually plumbed back to the gas water heating storage tanks, not directly into the solar tank. This means recirculation loop designs should be mostly based on the building floor plan and are relatively independent of the solar water heating system. The system's gas water heating equipment and solar tank should be located close together to avoid heat loss from the piping that connects the two systems. The preferred configuration is to place both the gas water heating equipment and solar tank on the top floor near the solar collector so that the total system pipe length can be reduced. Minimizing pipe length helps to reduce domestic hot water (DHW) system energy use as well as system plumbing cost.

4.7.3.3 Demand Recirculation Control

The prescriptive requirement for DHW systems serving multiple dwelling units requires the installation of a demand recirculation control to minimize pump operation. Demand circulation control is different than the demand control used in single dwelling units. Demand controls for central recirculation systems are based on hot water demand and recirculation return temperatures. The temperature sensor should be installed at the last branch pipe along the recirculation loop.

Any system that does not meet the prescriptive requirements must instead meet the standard design building energy budget or otherwise follow the performance compliance approach.

4.7.4 Pool and Spa Heating Systems

§110.4

Pool and spa heating systems must be certified by the manufacturer and listed by the Energy Commission as having:

1. An efficiency that complies with the Appliance Efficiency Regulations
2. An on/off switch mounted on the outside of the heater in a readily accessible location that allows the heater to be shut off without adjusting the thermostat setting
3. A permanent, easily readable, and weatherproof plate or card that gives instructions for the energy efficient operation of the pool or spa, and for the proper care of the pool or spa water when a cover is used.

No electric resistance heating, except:

a) Listed packaged units with fully insulated enclosures and tight fitting covers that are insulated to at least R-6. Listed package units are defined in the National Electric Code and are typically sold as self-contained, UL Listed spas.

b) Pools or spas deriving at least 60 percent of the annual heating energy from site solar energy or recovered energy.

If a pool or spa does not currently use solar heating collectors for heating of the water, piping must be installed to accommodate any future installation. Contractors can choose one of three options to allow for the future addition of solar heating equipment:

1. Leave at least 36 inches of pipe between the filter and heater to allow for the future addition of solar heating equipment

2. Plumb separate suction and return lines to the pool dedicated to future solar heating
3. Install built-up or built-in connections for future piping to solar water heating, (example: a built-in connection could be a capped off tee fitting between the filter and heater)

Pool and spa heating systems with gas or electric heaters for outdoor use must use a pool cover. The pool cover must be fitted and installed during the final inspection.

All pool systems must be installed with the following:

1. Directional inlets must be provided for all pools that adequately mix the pool water.
2. A time switch or similar control mechanism shall be provided for pools to control the operation of the circulation control system, to allow the pump to be set or programmed to run in the off-peak demand period, and for the minimum time necessary to maintain the water in the condition required by applicable public health standards.

§110.5

Pool and spa heaters are not allowed to have pilot lights.

4.8 Performance Approach

Under the performance approach, the energy use of the building is modeled using a compliance software program approved by the Energy Commission. Program users and those checking for enforcement should consult the most current version of the user's manuals and associated compliance supplements for specific instructions on the operation of the program. All compliance software programs, however, are required to have the same basic modeling capabilities.

More information on how to model the mechanical systems and components are included in Chapter 9, Performance Approach, and in the program vendor's compliance supplement.

The compliance rules used by the computer methods in generating the energy budget and compliance credits are based on features required for prescriptive compliance. Detailed information can be found in the Nonresidential Alternative Calculation Methods (ACM) Approval Manual.

There are minimum modeling capabilities required for programs that are used for the performance approach. All certified programs are tested for conformance with the requirements of the Nonresidential ACM. The designer has to use an approved program to show compliance.

Compliance is shown by running two models: a base case budget building that nominally meets the mandatory and prescriptive requirements and a proposed building that represents the actual building's proposed envelope, lighting and mechanical systems. To create a level playing field the base case and proposed designs are compared using the same assumptions of occupancy, proscribed climatic conditions and operating schedules. The results are compared using standardized time of use rates, or TDV of energy cost.

The proposed building complies if its annual TDV is less than or equal to that of the budget building. Reference Appendix JA3 describes the derivation of the TDV energy multipliers.

Compliance in the Performance Approach is across all building systems. The design team can use more glass than with the prescriptive approach and comply by making a more efficient HVAC system. Energy can be traded off between prescriptive requirements in the envelope, HVAC system, indoor lighting and covered processes.

The alternative calculation method defines the modeling rules for developing the base-case model of the building and mechanical systems. The base-case HVAC system(s) is modeled on a system(s) according to occupancy type, floor area of building, number of floors, and zoning.

The following are some examples of how to get credit in the Performance Approach from HVAC systems:

- Use of high efficiency equipment that exceeds the minimum requirements of §110.1 and §110.2
- Application of economizers where they are not required
- Oversizing ducts and pipes to reduce fan and pump energy
- Use of heat recovery for space or water heating
- Use of thermal energy storage systems or building mass to move cooling off peak
- Reduce reheating and recooling

Use of thermally driven cooling equipment, such as absorption chillers.

4.9 Additions and Alterations

4.9.1 Overview

This section addresses how the Energy Standards apply to mechanical systems for additions and alterations to existing buildings.

Application of the Energy Standards to existing buildings is often more difficult than for new buildings because of the wide variety of conditions that can be experienced in the field. In understanding the requirements, two general principles apply:

1. Existing systems or equipment are not required to meet the Energy Standards.
2. New systems and equipment are required to meet both the mandatory measures and the prescriptive requirements or the performance requirements as modeled in conjunction with the envelope and lighting design.

When heating, cooling or service water heating are provided for an alteration or addition by expanding an existing system, generally, that existing system need not comply with the mandatory measures or prescriptive requirements. However, any altered component must meet all applicable mandatory measures and prescriptive requirements.

4.9.1.1 Relocation of Equipment

When existing heating, cooling, or service water heating systems or components are moved within a building, the existing systems or components do not need to comply with mandatory measures nor with the prescriptive or performance compliance requirements.

Performance approach may also be used to demonstrate compliance for alterations. Refer to Chapter 11, Performance Approach, for more details.

4.9.2 Mandatory Measures – Additions and Alterations

New mechanical equipment or systems in additions and/or alterations must comply with the mandatory measures as listed below. Additional information on these requirements is provided in earlier sections of this Chapter.

Table 4-24: Requirements for Additions and Alterations

Mandatory Measure	Application to Additions and Alterations
§110.1 – Mandatory requirements for Appliances (see Section 4.2)	The California Appliance Efficiency Regulations apply to small to medium sized heating equipment, cooling equipment and water heaters. These requirements are enforced for all equipment sold in California and therefore apply to all equipment used in additions or alterations.
§110.2 – Mandatory Requirements for Space-Conditioning Equipment (see Section 4.2)	This section sets minimum efficiency requirements for equipment not covered by §110.1. Any equipment used in additions or alterations must meet these efficiency requirements.
§110.3 – Mandatory Requirements for Service Water-Heating Systems and Equipment (see Section 4.2)	This section sets minimum efficiency and control requirements for water heating equipment. It also sets requirements for recirculating hot water distribution systems. All new equipment installed in additions and/or alterations shall meet the requirements. The recirculation loop requirements of §110.3(c)5 apply when water heating equipment and/or plumbing is changed.
§110.4 – Mandatory Requirements for Pool and Spa Heating Systems and Equipment (see Sections 4.2 and 4.7).	The pool requirements of §110.4 do not apply for maintenance or repairs of existing pool heating or filtration systems.
§110.5 – Natural Gas Central Furnaces, Cooking Equipment, and Pool and Spa Heaters: Pilot Lights Prohibited (see Section 4.2)	Any new gas appliances installed in additions or alterations shall not have a standing pilot light, unless one of the exceptions in §110.5 is satisfied.
§120.1 – Requirements for Ventilation (see Section 4.3)	Systems that are altered or new systems serving an addition shall meet the outside air ventilation and control requirements, as applicable. When existing systems are extending to serve additions or when occupancy changes in an existing building (such as the conversion of office space to a large conference room), the outside air settings at the existing air handler may need to be modified and, in some cases,, new controls may be necessary.

§120.2 – Required Controls for Space-Conditioning Systems (see Section 4.5)	§120.2(a) requires a thermostat for any new zones in additions or new zones created in an alteration. §120.2(b) requires that new thermostats required by §120.2(a) meet the minimum requirements. §120.2(c) applies to hotel/motel guest rooms only when the system level controls are replaced; replacement of individual thermostats are considered a repair. However, §120.2(c) applies to all new thermostats in high-rise residential, including replacements. §120.2(d) requires that new heat pumps used in either alterations or additions have controls to limit the use of electric resistance heat, per §110.2(b). This applies to any new heat pump installed in conjunction with an addition and/or alteration. §120.2(e) requires that new systems in alterations and additions have scheduling and setback controls. §120.2(f) requires that outside air dampers automatically close when the fan is not operating or during unoccupied periods and remain closed during setback heating and cooling. This applies when a new system or air handling unit is replaced in conjunction with an addition or alteration. §120.2(g) requires that areas served by large systems be divided into isolation areas so that heating, cooling and/or the supply of air can be provided to only the isolation areas that need it and other isolation areas can be shut off. This applies to additions larger than 25,000 sq ft and to the replacement of existing systems when the total area served is greater than 25,000 sq ft. §120.2(h) requires that direct digital controls (DDC) that operate at the zone level be programmed to enable non-critical loads to be shed during electricity emergencies. This requirement applies to additions and/or alterations anytime DDC are installed that operate at the zone level. §120.2(i) requires a Fault Detection and Diagnostic System for all newly added air handler units equipped with an economizer and mechanical cooling capacity equal to or greater than 54,000 Btu/hr in accordance with §120.2(i)2. through §120.2(i)8. §120.2(j) requires DDC in new construction, additions or alterations for certain applications and qualifications. It also requires certain capabilities for mandated DDC systems. §120.2(k) requires optimum start/stop when DDC is to the zone level.
§120.3 – Requirements for Pipe Insulation (see Section 4.4)	The pipe insulation requirements apply to any new piping installed in additions or alterations.
§120.4 – Requirements for Air Distribution System Ducts and Plenums (see Section 4.4)	The duct insulation, construction and sealing requirements apply to any new ductwork installed in additions or alterations.
§120.5 – Required Nonresidential Mechanical System Acceptance (See Chapter 13)	Acceptance requirements are triggered for systems or equipment installed in additions and alterations the same way they are for new buildings or systems.

4.9.3 Requirements for Additions

4.9.3.1 Prescriptive Approach

All new additions must comply with the following prescriptive requirements:

- §140.4 – Prescriptive Requirements for Space Conditioning Systems
- §140.5 – Prescriptive Requirements for Service Water-Heating Systems

For more detailed information about the prescriptive requirements, refer to following sections of this chapter:

- Section 4.5.2 - HVAC Controls
- Section 4.6.2 - HVAC System Requirements

4.9.3.2 Performance Approach

The performance approach may also be used to demonstrate compliance for new additions. When using the performance approach for additions §141.0(a)2B defines the characteristics of the standard design building.

For more detailed information, see Chapter 11, Performance Approach.

4.9.3.3 Acceptance Tests

Acceptance tests must be conducted on the new equipment or systems when installed in new additions. For more detailed information, see Chapter 13.

4.9.4 Requirements for Alterations

4.9.4.1 Prescriptive Requirements – New or Replacement Equipment

New space conditioning systems or components other than space conditioning ducts must meet applicable prescriptive requirements of Sections 4.5.2 and 4.6.2 (§140.4).

Minor equipment maintenance (such as replacement of filters or belts) does not trigger the prescriptive requirements. Equipment replacement (such as the installation of a new air handler or cooling tower) would be subject to the prescriptive requirements. Another example is when an existing VAV system is expanded to serve additional zones, the new VAV boxes are subject to zone controls of Section 4.5. Details on prescriptive requirements may be found in other sections of this chapter.

Replacements of electric resistance space heaters for high-rise residential apartments are also exempt from the prescriptive requirements. Replacements of electric heat or electric resistance space heaters are allowed where natural gas is not available.

For alterations there are special rules for:

1. New or Replacement Space Conditioning Systems or Components in §141.0(b)2C.
2. Altered Duct Systems in §141.0(b)2D.
3. Altered Space – Conditioning Systems in §141.0(b)2E.
4. Service water heating has to meet all of §140.5 with the exception of the solar water heating requirements in §141.0(b)2L.

4.9.4.2 Prescriptive Requirements – Air Distribution Ducts

§141.0(b)2D

When new or replacement space-conditioning ducts are installed to serve an existing building, the new ducts shall meet the requirements of Section 4.4 (e.g., insulation levels, sealing materials and methods).

If the ducts are part of a single zone constant volume system serving less than 5,000 sq ft and more than 25 percent of the ducts are outdoors or in unconditioned areas (including attic spaces and above insulated ceilings) then the duct system shall be sealed and tested for air leakage by the contractor. In most nonresidential buildings, this requirement will not apply because the roof is insulated so that almost all of the duct length is running through directly or indirectly conditioned space.

If the ducts are in unconditioned space and have to be sealed, they must also be tested to leak no more than 6 percent if the entire duct system is new, or less than 15 percent if the duct system is added to a pre-existing duct system. The description of the test method can be found in Section 2.1.4.2 of Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2. The air distribution acceptance test associated with this can be found in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7. This and all acceptance tests are described in Chapter 13 of this manual.

If the new ducts form an entirely new duct system directly connected to an existing or new air handler, the measured duct leakage shall be less than 6 percent of fan flow.

Alternatively, if the new ducts are an extension of an existing duct system, the combined new and existing duct system shall meet one of the following requirements:

1. The measured duct leakage shall be less than 15 percent of fan flow.
2. If it is not possible to meet the duct sealing requirements of §141.0(b)2Dii, all accessible leaks shall be sealed and verified through a visual inspection and smoke test performed by a certified HERS rater utilizing the methods specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA 2.1.4.2.2.

Exception: Existing duct systems that are extended, constructed, insulated or sealed with asbestos.

Once the ducts have been sealed and tested to leak less than the above amounts, a HERS rater will be contacted by the contractor to validate the accuracy of the duct sealing measurement on a sample of the systems repaired as described in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA1. Certified Acceptance Test Technicians (ATT may perform these field verifications only if the Acceptance Test Technician Certification Provider (ATTCP) has been approved to provide this service.

4.9.4.3 Prescriptive Requirements – Space-Conditioning Systems Alterations

§141.0(b)2E

Similar requirements apply to ducts upon replacement of small (serving less than 5,000 sq ft) constant volume HVAC units or their components (including replacement of the air handler, outdoor condensing unit of a split system air conditioner or heat pump, or cooling or heating coil). The duct sealing requirements are for those systems where over 25 percent of the duct area is outdoors or in unconditioned areas including attic spaces and above insulated ceilings.

One can avoid sealing the ducts by insulating the roof and sealing the attic vents as part of a larger remodel, thereby creating a conditioned space within which the ducts are located, which no longer meets the criteria of §140.4(l).

When a space conditioning system is altered by the installation or replacement of space conditioning equipment (including replacement of the air handler, outdoor condensing unit of a split system air conditioner or heat pump, or cooling or heating coil), the duct system that is connected to the new or replaced space conditioning equipment, shall be sealed, as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with procedures for duct sealing of existing duct systems as specified in the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA1, to one of the requirements of §141.0(b)2D. In addition, the system shall include a setback thermostat that meets requirements of §110.12(a).

There are three exceptions to this requirement:

1. Buildings altered so that the duct system no longer meets the criteria of §140.4(l)1, 2, and 3. Ducts would no longer have to be sealed if the roof deck was insulated and attic ventilation openings sealed.
2. Duct systems that are documented to have been previously sealed as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with procedures in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2.
3. Existing duct systems constructed, insulated or sealed with asbestos.

For all altered unitary single zone, air conditioners, heat pumps, and furnaces where the existing thermostat does not comply with §110.12(a), the existing thermostat must be replaced with one that does comply. All newly installed space-conditioning systems requiring a thermostat shall be equipped with a thermostat that complies with §110.12(a). A thermostat compliant with §110.12(a) is also known as an occupant controlled smart thermostat, which is capable of responding to demand response signals in the event of grid congestion and shortages during high electrical demand periods.

4.9.4.4 Performance Approach

When using the performance approach for alterations, see §141.0(b)3.

4.9.4.5 Acceptance Tests

Acceptance tests must be conducted on the new equipment or systems when installed in new additions. For more detailed information, see Chapter 13.

Example 4-52

Question

A maintenance contractor comes twice a year to change the filters and check out the rooftop packaged equipment that serves an office. Do the Energy Standards apply to this type of work?

Answer

No. The Energy Standards do not apply to general maintenance such as replacing filters, belts or other components. However, if the rooftop unit wears out and needs to be replaced, then the new unit would have to meet the equipment efficiency requirements of §110.2, the mandatory requirements of §120.1-§120.4 and the prescriptive requirements of §140.4.

Example 4-53

Question

A building is being renovated and the old heating system is being entirely removed and replaced with a new system that provides both heating and cooling. How do the Energy Standards apply?

Answer

Yes. All of the requirements of the Energy Standards apply in the same way they would if the system were in a new building.

Example 4-54

Question

A 10,000 sq ft addition is being added to a 25,000 sq ft building. The addition has its own rooftop HVAC system. The system serving the existing building is not being modified. How do the Energy Standards apply?

Answer

The addition is treated as a separate building and all the requirements of the Energy Standards apply to the addition. None of the requirements apply to the existing system or existing building since it is not being modified.

Example 4-55

Question

A 3,000 sq ft addition is being added to a 50,000 sq ft office. The existing packaged VAV system has unused capacity and will be used to serve the addition as well as the existing building. This system has DDC at the zone level and an air side economizer.

Ductwork will be extended from an existing trunk line and two additional VAV boxes will be installed with hot water reheat. Piping for reheat will be extended from existing branch lines. How do the Energy Standards apply?

Answer

The general rule is that the Energy Standards apply to new construction and not to existing systems that are not being modified. In this case, the Energy Standards would not apply to the existing Packaged VAV. However, the ductwork serving the addition would have to be sealed and insulated according to the requirements of §120.4 and the hot water piping would have to be insulated according to the requirements of §120.3 In addition, the new thermostats would have to meet the requirements of §120.2 (a), (b), and (h); ventilation would have to be provided per §120.1, fractional fan motors in the new space would have to comply with §140.4(c)4; and the new VAV boxes would have to meet the requirements of 140.4(d).

Example 4-56

Question

In the previous example (3,000 sq ft addition is added to a 50,000 sq ft office), how do the outside air ventilation requirements of §120.1 apply?

Answer

The outside air ventilation rates specified in §120.1 apply at the air handler. When existing air handlers are extended to serve additional space, it is necessary to reconfigure the air handler to assure that the outside air requirements of §120.1 are satisfied for all the spaces served. In addition, the acceptance requirements for outside air ventilation are also triggered (see Chapter 12). It would be necessary to evaluate the occupancies both in the addition and the existing building to determine the minimum outside air needed to meet the requirements of §120.1. The existing air handler would have to be controlled to assure that the minimum outside air is delivered to the spaces served by the air handler for all positions of the VAV boxes. For more detailed information, see Section 4.3.Additional controls may need to be installed at the air handler to meet this requirement.

Example 4-57

Question

In the previous example, the 3,000 sq ft addition contains a large 400 sq ft conference room. What additional requirements are triggered in this instance?

Answer

In this case, the demand control requirements of §120.1(d)3 would apply to the conference room, since it has an occupant density greater than 25 persons per 1,000 sq ft and the packaged VAV system serving the building has an air economizer. If the existing system did not have an air economizer, then the demand control requirements would not apply. A CO2 sensor would need to be provided in the conference room to meet this requirement. The programming on the OSA damper would have to be modified to increase OSA if the zone ventilation wasn't satisfied.

Example 4-58

Question

An existing building has floor-by-floor VAV systems with no air side economizers. The VAV boxes also have electric reheat. Outside air is ducted to the air handlers on each floor which is adequate to meet the ventilation requirements of §120.1, but not large enough to bring in 100 percent outside air which would be needed for economizer operation. A tenant space encompassing the whole floor is being renovated and new ductwork and new VAV boxes are being installed. Does the economizer requirement of §140.4(e) apply? Does the restriction on electric resistance heat of §140.4(g) apply?

Answer

Since the air handler is not being replaced, the economizer requirement of §140.4(e) does not apply. If in the future the air handler were to be replaced, the economizer requirement would need to be satisfied. However, for systems such as this a water side economizer is often installed instead of an air side economizer. The electric resistance restriction of §140.4(g) does apply, unless the Exception 2 to §141.0(a) applies. This exception permits electric resistance to be used for the additional VAV boxes as long as the total capacity of the electric resistance system does not increase by more than 150 percent.

Example 4-59

Question

In the previous example, the building owner has decided to replace the air handler on the floor where the tenant space is being renovated because the new tenant has electronic equipment that creates more heat than can be removed by the existing system. In this case, does the economizer requirement of §140.4(e) apply?

Answer

In this case, because the air handler is being replaced, the economizer requirement does apply. The designer would have a choice of using an air-side economizer or a water-side economizer. The air side economizer option would likely require additional or new ductwork to bring in the necessary volume of outside air. The feasibility of a water economizer will depend on the configuration of the building. Often a cooling tower is on the roof and chillers are in the basement with chilled water and condenser water lines running in a common shaft. In this case, it may be possible to tap into the condenser water lines and install a water economizer. However, pressure controls would need to be installed at the take offs at each floor and at the chiller.

Example 4-60

Question

Four hundred tons of capacity is being added to an existing 800-ton chilled water plant. The existing plant is air cooled (two 400-ton air cooled chillers). Can the new chillers also be air cooled?

Answer

No. The requirements of §140.4(j) apply in this case and a maximum of 300 tons of air-cooled chillers has been reached (and exceeded) at this plant. The remainder has to be water cooled. They would not have to retrofit the plant to replace either of the existing air-cooled chillers with water cooled. If one of the existing air-cooled chillers failed in the future it would have to be replaced with a water-cooled chiller. If both air-cooled chillers failed, they could only provide 300 tons of air-cooled capacity.

4.10 Glossary/Reference

Terms used in this chapter are defined in Reference Joint Appendix JA1. Definitions that appear below are either not included within Reference Joint Appendix JA1 or expand on the definitions.

4.10.1 Definitions of Efficiency

Minimum efficiency requirements that regulated appliances and other equipment must meet are in §110.1 and §110.2. The following describes the various measurements of efficiency used in the Energy Standards.

The purpose of space-conditioning and water-heating equipment is to convert energy from one form to another, and to regulate the flow of that energy. Efficiency is a measure of how effectively the energy is converted or regulated. It is expressed as the ratio:

Equation 4-11

$$Efficiency = \frac{Output}{Input}$$

The units of measure in which the input and output energy are expressed may be either the same or different and vary according to the type of equipment. The Energy Standards use several different measures of efficiency.

Combustion efficiency is defined in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations as follows:

Combustion efficiency of a space heater means a measure of the percentage of heat from the combustion of gas or oil that is transferred to the space being heated or lost as jacket loss, as determined using the applicable test method in Section 1604(e) of Title 20.

Boiler means a space heater that is a self-contained appliance for supplying steam or hot water primarily intended for space-heating. Boiler does not include hot water supply boilers.

Where boilers used for space heating, they are considered to be a form of space heater.

Thermal or combustion efficiency is used as the efficiency measurement for gas and oil boilers with rated input greater than or equal to 300,000 Btu/hr. It is a measure of the percent of energy transfer from the fuel to the heat exchanger (HX). Input and output energy are expressed in the same units so that the result has non-dimensional units:

Equation 12

$$\%\text{ Combustion Eff} = \frac{(\text{Energy to HX})\text{ x }100}{\text{Total Fuel Energy Input}}$$

Combustion efficiency does not include losses from the boiler jacket. It is strictly a measure of the energy transferred from the products of combustion.

Fan Power Index is the power consumption of the fan system per unit of air moved per minute (W/cfm) at design conditions.

Thermal Efficiency is defined in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations as a measure of the percentage of heat from the combustion of gas, which is transferred to the space or water being heated as measured under test conditions specified. The definitions from the Appliance Efficiency Regulations are:

1. Thermal Efficiency of a space heater means a measure of the percentage of heat from the combustion of gas or oil that is transferred to the space being heated, or in the case of a boiler, to the hot water or steam, as determined using the applicable test methods in Section 1604(e).
2. Thermal Efficiency of a water heater means a measure of the percentage of heat from the combustion of gas or oil that is transferred to the water, as determined using the applicable test method in Section 1604(f).
3. Thermal Efficiency of a pool heater means a measure of the percentage of heat from the input that is transferred to the water, as determined using the applicable test method in Section 1604(g).

Equation 4-13

$$\%\ Thermal\ Efficiency = \frac{(Energy\ Transferred\ to\ Medium)}{(Total\ Fuel\ Input)}$$

4.10.2 Definitions of Spaces and Systems

The concepts of spaces, zones, and space-conditioning systems are discussed in this subsection.

Fan System is a fan or collection of fans that are used in the scope of the prescriptive requirement for fan-power limitations. Fan systems, as defined in §140.4(c), all fans in the system that are required to operate at design conditions in order to supply air from the heating or cooling source to the conditioned space, and to return it back to the source or to exhaust it to the outdoors. For cooling systems this includes supply fans, return fans, relief fans, fan coils, series-style fan powered boxes, parallel-style fan powered boxes and exhaust fans. For systems without cooling this includes supply fans, return fans, relief fans, fan coils, series-style fan powered boxes, parallel-style fan powered boxes and exhaust fans. Parallel-style fan-powered boxes are often not included in a terminal unit where there is no need for heating as the fans are only needed for heating.

Space is not formally defined in the Energy Standards but is considered to be an area that is physically separated from other areas by walls or other barriers. From a mechanical perspective, the barriers act to inhibit the free exchange of air with other spaces. The term space may be used interchangeably with room.

Space Conditioning zone is a space or group of spaces within a building with sufficiently similar comfort conditioning requirements so that comfort conditions, as specified in §140.4(b)3, as applicable, can be maintained throughout the zone by a single controlling device. It is the designer’s responsibility to determine the zoning; in most cases each building exposure will consist of at least one zone. Interior spaces that are not affected by outside weather conditions usually can be treated as a single zone.

A building will generally have more than one zone. For example, a facility having 10 spaces with similar conditioning (that are heated and cooled by a single space-conditioning unit using one thermostat) has one zone. However, if a second thermostat and control damper, or an additional mechanical system, is added to separately control the temperature within any of the 10 spaces, then the building has two zones.

Space-Conditioning System is used to define the scope of the requirements of the Energy Standards. It is a catch-all term for mechanical equipment and distribution systems that provide (either collectively or individually) heating, ventilating, or cooling within or associated with conditioned spaces in a building. HVAC equipment is considered part of a space-conditioning system if it does not exclusively serve a process within the building. Space-conditioning systems include general and toilet exhaust systems.

Space-conditioning systems may encompass a single HVAC unit and distribution system (such as a package HVAC unit) or include equipment that services multiple HVAC units (such as a central outdoor air supply system, chilled water plant equipment or central hot water system).

4.10.3 Types of Air

Exhaust Air is air being removed from any space or piece of equipment and conveyed directly to the atmosphere by means of openings or ducts. The exhaust may serve specific areas (such as toilet rooms) or may be for a general building relief, such as an economizer.

Make-up Air is air provided to replace air being exhausted.

Mixed Air is a combination of supply air from multiple air streams. The term mixed air is used in the Energy Standards in an exception to the prescriptive requirement for space conditioning zone controls, §140.4(d). In this manual the term mixed air is also used to describe a combination of outdoor and return air in the mixing plenum of an air handling unit.

Outdoor Air is air taken from outdoors and not previously circulated in the building. For the purposes of ventilation, outdoor air is used to flush out pollutants produced by the building materials, occupants and processes. To ensure that all spaces are adequately ventilated with outdoor air, the Energy Standards require that each space be adequately ventilated, see Section 4.3.

Return Air is air from the conditioned area that is returned to the conditioning equipment either for reconditioning or exhaust. The air may return to the system through a series of ducts, or through plenums and airshafts.

Supply Air is air being conveyed to a conditioned area through ducts or plenums from a space-conditioning system. Depending on space requirements, the supply may be heated, cooled, or neutral.

Transfer Air is air that is transferred directly from either one space to another or from a return plenum to a space. Transfer air is a way to meet the ventilation requirements at the space level and is an acceptable method of ventilation per §120.1. It works by transferring air with a low level of pollutants (from an over-ventilated space) to a space with a higher level of pollutants, see Section 4.3).

4.10.4 Air-Delivery Systems

Space-conditioning systems can be grouped according to how the airflow is regulated as follows:

Constant Volume System is a space-conditioning system that delivers a fixed amount of air to each space. The volume of air is set during the system commissioning.

Variable Air Volume (VAV) System is a space conditioning system that maintains comfort levels by varying the volume of conditioned air to the zones served. This system delivers conditioned air to one or more zones. There are two styles of VAV systems, single-duct VAV (where mechanically cooled air is typically supplied and reheated through a duct mounted coil) and dual-duct VAV (where heated and cooled streams of air are blended at the zone level). In single-duct VAV systems the duct serving each zone is provided with a motorized damper that is modulated by a signal from the zone thermostat. The thermostat also controls the reheat coil. In dual-duct VAV systems the ducts serving each zone are provided with motorized dampers that blend the supply air based on a signal from the zone thermostat.

Pressure Dependent VAV Box is a system that has an air damper whose position is controlled directly by the zone thermostat. The actual airflow at any given damper position is a function of the air static pressure within the duct. Because airflow is not measured, this type of box cannot precisely control the airflow at any given moment:

a pressure dependent box will vary in output as other boxes on the system modulate to control their zones.

Pressure Independent VAV Box is a system with an air damper whose position is controlled on the basis of measured airflow. The set point of the airflow controller is, in turn, reset by a zone thermostat. A maximum and minimum airflow is set in the controller, and the box modulates between the two according to room temperature.

4.10.5 Return Plenums

Return Air Plenum is an air compartment, or chamber, other than the occupied space being conditioned- to which one or more ducts are connected and which forms part of either the supply air, return air or exhaust air system. The return air temperature is usually within a few degrees of space temperature. This may include uninhabited crawl spaces, areas above a ceiling or below a floor, air spaces below raised floors of computer/data processing centers, or attic spaces.

4.10.6 Zone Reheat, Recool, and Air Mixing

When a space-conditioning system supplies air to one or more zones, different zones may be at different temperatures because of varying loads. Temperature regulation is normally accomplished by varying the conditioned air supply (variable volume); varying the temperature of the air delivered, or by a combination of supply and temperature control. With multiple zone systems, the ventilation requirements or damper control limitations may cause the cold air supply to be higher than the zone load. This air is tempered through reheat or mixing with warmer supply air to satisfy the actual zone load. The regulations in §140.4(c) limits the amount of energy used to simultaneously heat and cool the same zone as a basis of zone temperature control.

Zone reheat is the heating of air that has been previously cooled by cooling equipment, systems, or an economizer. A heating device, usually a hot water coil, is placed in the zone supply duct and is controlled via a zone thermostat. Electric reheat is sometimes used but is severely restricted by the Energy Standards.

Zone recool is the cooling of air that has been previously heated by space conditioning equipment or systems serving the same building. A chilled water or refrigerant coil is usually placed in the zone supply duct and is controlled via a zone thermostat. Re-cooling is less common than reheating.

Zone Air Mixing occurs when more than one stream of conditioned air is combined to serve a zone. This can occur at the HVAC system (e.g. multizone), in the ductwork (e.g., dual-duct system) or at the zone level (such as a zone served by a central cooling system and baseboard heating). In some multizone and dual duct systems an unconditioned supply is used to temper either the heating or cooling air through mixing. The regulation in §140.4(c) only applies to systems that mix heated and cooled air.

4.10.7 Economizers

4.10.7.1 Air Economizers

An air economizer is a ducting arrangement and automatic control system that allows a cooling supply fan system to supply outside air to reduce or eliminate the need for mechanical cooling.

When the compliance path chosen for meeting the Energy Standards requires an economizer, the economizer must be integrated into the system so that it is capable of satisfying part of the cooling load while the rest of the load is satisfied by the refrigeration equipment. The Energy Standards also require that all new economizers meet the Acceptance Requirements for Code Compliance before a final occupancy permit may be granted. The operation of an integrated air economizer is diagrammed in Figure 4-36.

When outdoor air is sufficiently cold, the economizer satisfies all cooling demands on its own. As the outdoor temperature (or enthalpy) rises, or as system cooling load increases, a point may be reached where the economizer is no longer able to satisfy the entire cooling load. At this point the economizer is supplemented by mechanical refrigeration, and both operate concurrently. Once the outside dry bulb temperature (for temperature-controlled economizer) or enthalpy (for enthalpy economizers) exceeds that of the return air or a predetermined high limit, the outside air intake is reduced to the minimum required for ventilation purposes, and cooling is satisfied by mechanical refrigeration only.

Nonintegrated economizers cannot be used to meet the economizer requirements of the prescriptive compliance approach. In nonintegrated economizer systems, the economizer may be interlocked with the refrigeration system to prevent both from operating simultaneously. The operation of a nonintegrated air economizer is diagrammed in Figure 4-33. Nonintegrated economizers can only be used if they comply through the performance approach.

Figure 4-34: Integrated Air Economizer

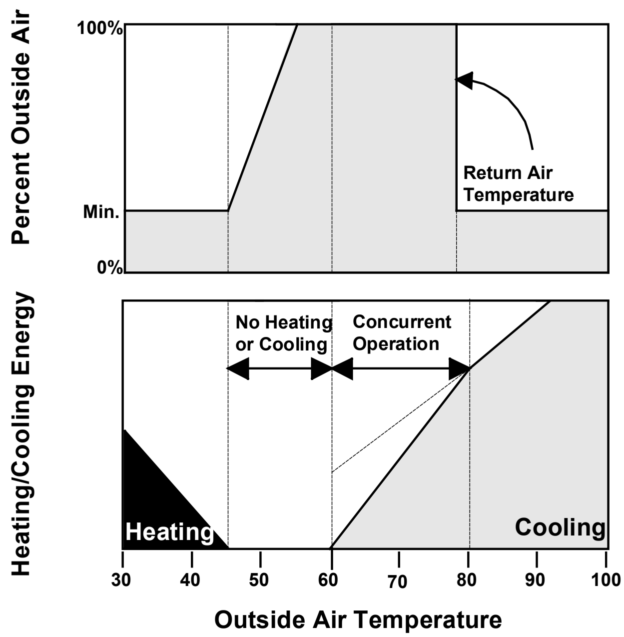
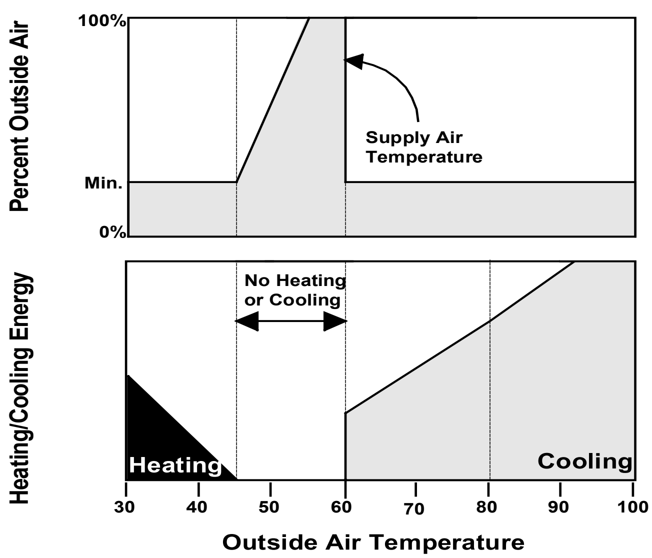


Figure 4-35: Nonintegrated Air Economizer



4.10.7.2 Water Economizers

A water economizer is a system by which the supply air of a cooling system is cooled directly or indirectly by evaporation of water, or other appropriate fluid, in order to reduce or eliminate the need for mechanical cooling.

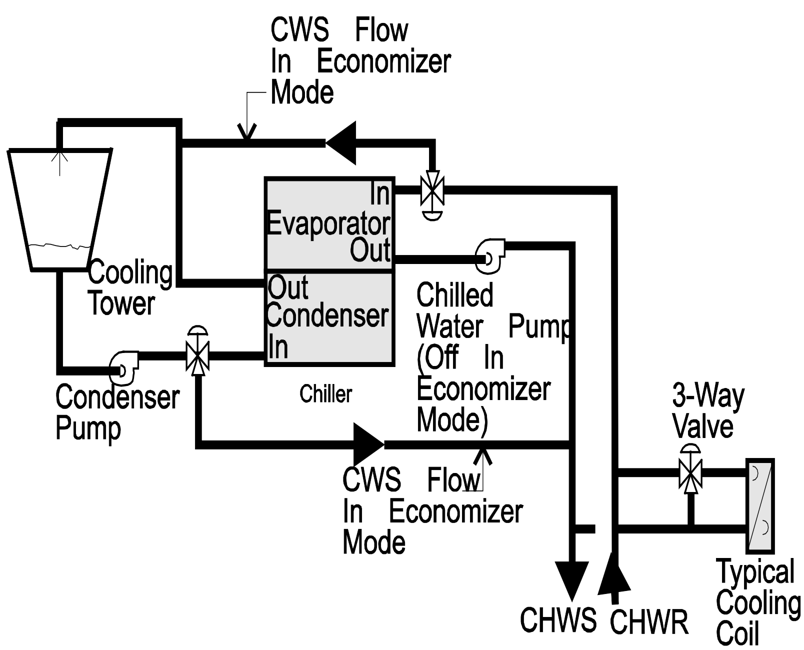
As with an air economizer, a water economizer must be integrated into the system so that the economizer can supply a portion of the cooling concurrently with the refrigeration system.

There are three common types of water-side economizers:

1. **Strainer-cycle or chiller-bypass water economizer** - The system depicted in Figure 4-38, below, does not meet the prescriptive requirement as it cannot operate in parallel with the chiller. This system is applied to equipment with chilled water coils.
2. **Water-precooling economizer** - The system depicted in Figure 4-39 and Figure 4-36, below, meets the prescriptive requirement if properly sized. This system is applied to equipment with chilled water coils.
3. **Air-precooling water economizer** - The system depicted in Figure 4-41 below, also *meets* the prescriptive requirement if properly sized. The air-precooling water economizer is appropriate for water-source heat pumps and other water-cooled HVAC units.

To comply with the prescriptive requirements, the cooling tower serving a water-side economizer must be sized for all of the anticipated cooling load at the off-design outdoor-air condition of 50-degree F dry bulb/45-degree F wet bulb. This requires rerunning the cooling loads at this revised design condition and checking the selected tower to ensure that it has adequate capacity.

Figure 4-36: "Strainer-Cycle" Water Economizer



This system does not meet the prescriptive requirement as it cannot operate in parallel with the chiller

Figure 4-37: Water-Precooling Water Economizer with Three-Way Valves

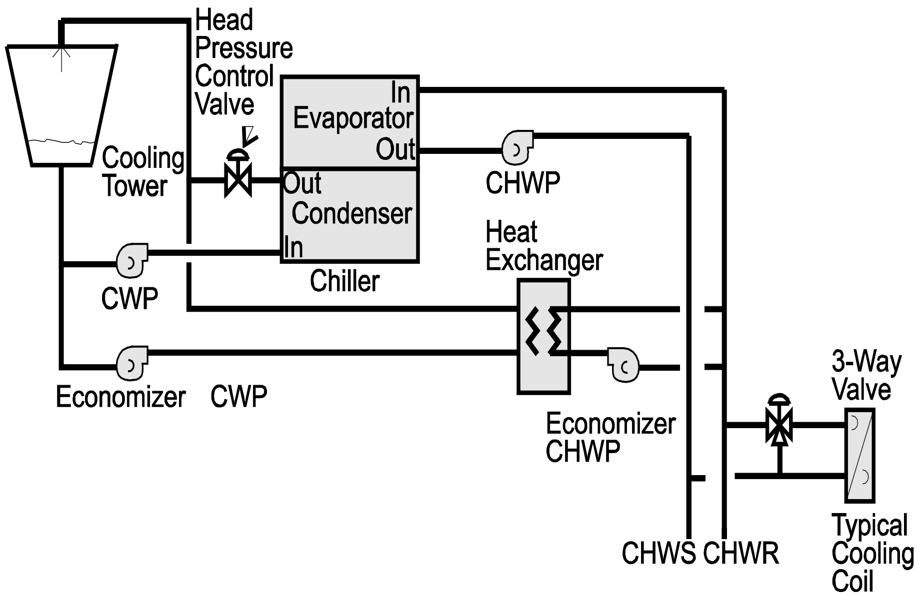


Figure 4-38: Water-Precooling Water Economizer with Two-Way Valves

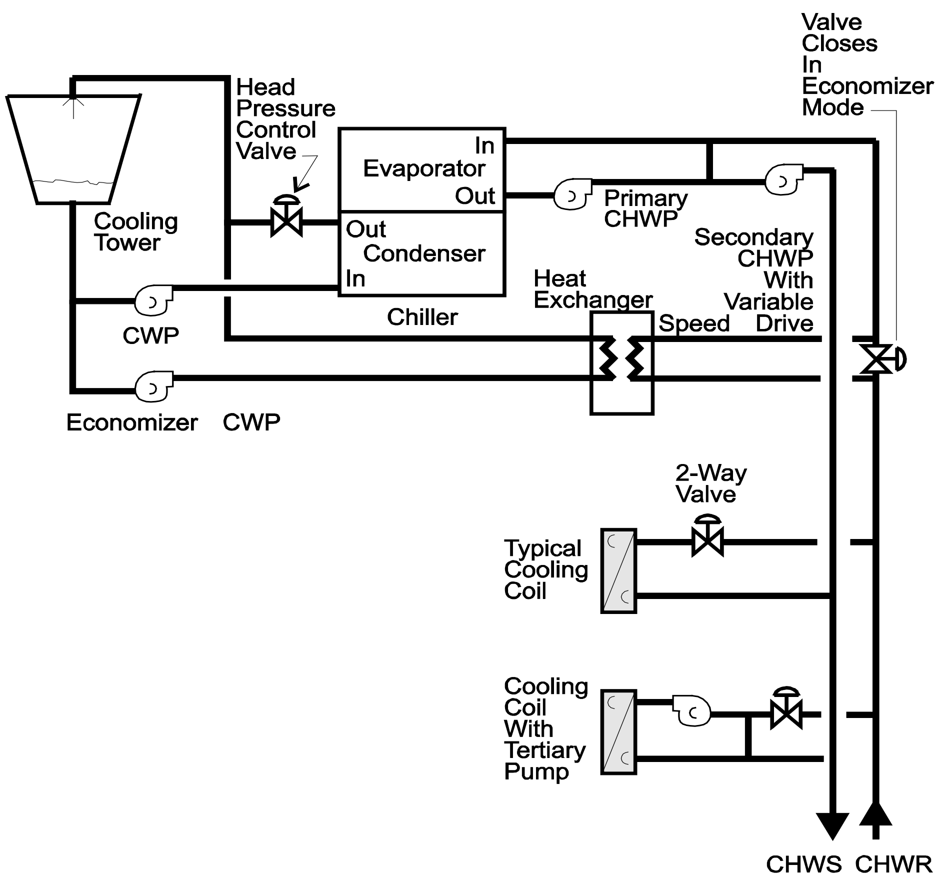
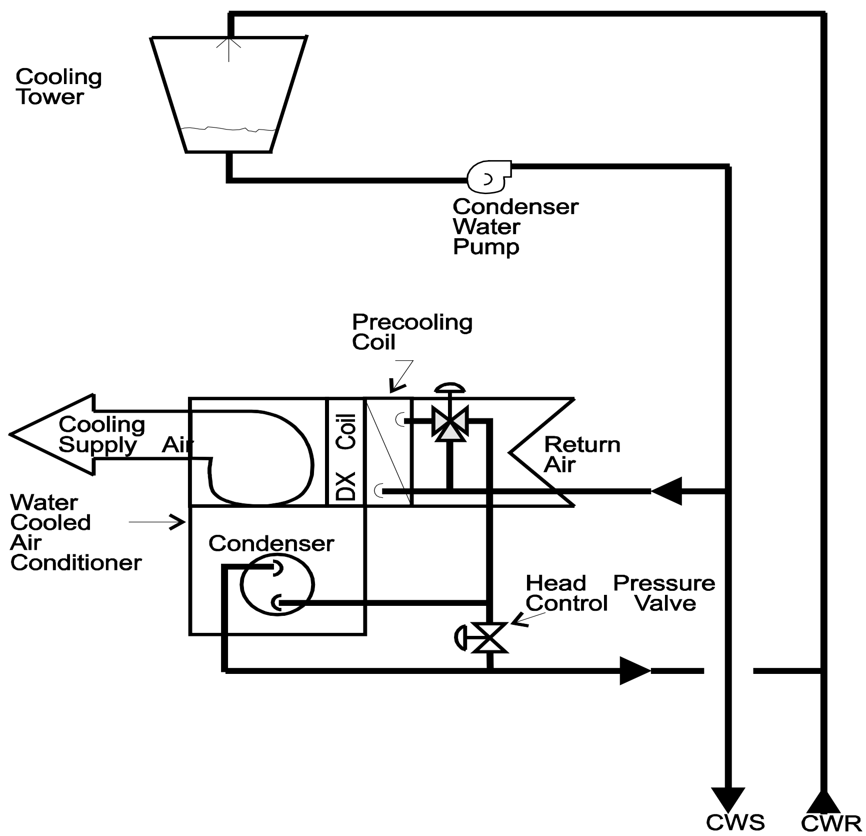


Figure 4-39: Air-Precooling Water Economizer



4.10.8 Unusual Sources of Contaminants

The regulation in §120.1 address ventilation requirements for buildings and uses the term of unusual sources of contamination. In this context, such contaminants are considered to be chemicals, materials, processes or equipment that produce pollutants which are considered harmful to humans and are not typically found in most building spaces. Examples may include some cleaning products, blueprint machines, heavy concentrations of cigarette smoke and chemicals used in various processes.

The air classification is designated in Tables 4-12, 4-13, and 4-14. In addition, guidance for such spaces not listed is left to the designer's discretion, and may include considerations of toxicity, concentration and duration of exposure. For example, while photocopiers and laser printers are known to emit ozone. If the equipment is scattered throughout a large space it may not be of concern. A heavy concentration of such machines in a small space may merit special treatment, see Section 4.3).

4.10.9 Demand Controlled Ventilation (DCV)

DCV is required for use on systems that have an outdoor air economizer, and serve a space with a design occupant density (or maximum occupant load factor for egress purposes) greater than or equal to 25 people per 1000 sq ft (40 sq ft per person), according to §120.1(c)3. DCV is also allowed as an exception in the ventilation requirements for intermittently occupied systems, see §120.1(d)1. It is a concept in which the amount of outdoor air used to purge one or more offending pollutants from a building is a function of the measured level of the pollutant(s).

The regulation in §120.1 allows for DCV devices that employ a CO_2 sensor. CO_2 sensors measure the level of CO_2, which is used as a proxy for the amount of pollutant dilution in densely occupied spaces. CO_2 sensors have been on the market for many years and are available with integrated self-calibration devices that maintain a maximum guaranteed signal drift over a 5-year period.

DCV is available at either the system level (used to reset the minimum position on the outside air damper) and at the zone level (used to reset the minimum airflow to the zone). The zone level devices are sometimes integrated into the zone thermostat.

Occupant sensor ventilation control devises are required when the space needs to comply with the occupant sensor control requirements for lighting, see §130.1(c).

Some examples include:

- Offices smaller than 250 sq ft
- Multipurpose rooms smaller than 1,000 sq ft
- Classrooms, conference rooms, and restrooms of any size

4.10.10 Intermittently Occupied Spaces

The DCV devices discussed here are allowed and/or required only in spaces that are intermittently occupied. An intermittently occupied space is considered to be an area that is infrequently or irregularly occupied by people. Examples include auction rooms, movie theaters, auditoriums, gaming rooms, bars, restaurants, conference rooms and other assembly areas. Because the Energy Standards require base ventilation in office spaces that are very close to the actual required ventilation rate at 15 cfm per person, these controls may not save significant amounts of energy for these low-density applications. However, even in office applications, some building owners may install CO_2 sensors as a way to monitor ventilation conditions and alert to possible malfunctions in building air delivery systems.

4.11 Mechanical Plan Check and Inspection Documents

At the time a building permit application is submitted to the enforcement agency, the applicant also submits plans and energy compliance documentation. This section describes the documents and recommended procedures documenting compliance with the mechanical requirements of the Energy Standards. It does not describe the details of the requirements; these are presented in Section 4.2. The following discussion is addressed to the designer preparing construction documents and compliance documentation, and to the enforcement agency plan checkers who are examining those documents for compliance with the Energy Standards.

The use of each document is briefly described. The information and format of these may be included in the equipment schedule:

NRCC-MCH-E: Certificate of Compliance

This dynamic document is required for every job, and it is required t on the plans. The following are included in the NRCC-MCH-E and only applicable forms will be required to be filled out.

- Major components of the heating and cooling systems, and service hot water and pool systems
- Outdoor air ventilation rates
- System fan power consumption

NRCC-PLB-E: Certificate of Compliance – Water Heating System General Information

This dynamic document is required for every job, and it is required t on the plans. The following are included in the NRCC-MCH-E and only applicable forms will be required to be filled out.

- All hot water systems
- Individual water heating systems installed in dwelling units in high-rise residential buildings and hotel / motels
- Central water heating systems that service multiple dwelling units installed in high-rise residential buildings and hotel/motels

4.11.1 Mechanical Inspection

The mechanical building inspection process for energy compliance is carried out along with the other building inspections performed by the enforcement agency. The inspector relies upon the plans and upon the NRCC-MCH-E Certificate of Compliance document printed on the plans.

4.11.2 Acceptance Requirements

Acceptance requirements can effectively improve code compliance and help determine whether mechanical equipment meets operational goals and whether it should be adjusted to increase efficiency and effectiveness.

For more detailed information on acceptance tests, see Chapter 13.

4.11.2.1 Acceptance Process

The process for meeting the acceptance requirements includes:

1. Document plans showing thermostat and sensor locations, control devices, control sequences and notes
2. Review the installation, perform acceptance tests document results
3. Document the operating and maintenance information, complete the certificate of installation and indicate test results on the certificate of acceptance, and submit the certificates to the enforcement agency prior to receiving a final occupancy permit.

4.11.2.2 Administration

The administrative requirements contained in the Energy Standards require the following:

1. Requirements for acceptance testing of mechanical systems and equipment shown in the table below are included in the plans and specifications:

Table 4-25: Mechanical Acceptance Tests

Variable Air Volume Systems
Constant Volume Systems
Package Systems
Air Distribution Systems
Economizers
Demand Control Ventilation Systems
Ventilation Systems
Variable Frequency Drive Fan Systems
Hydronic Control Systems
Hydronic Pump Isolation Controls and Devices
Supply Water Reset Controls
Water Loop Heat Pump Control
Variable Frequency Drive Pump Systems

2. Within 90 days of receiving a final occupancy permit, record drawings be provided to the building owners
3. Operating and maintenance information be provided to the building owner
4. The issuance of installation certificates for mechanical equipment

For example, the plans and specifications would require an economizer. A construction inspection would verify the economizer is installed and properly wired. Acceptance tests would verify economizer operation and proper function the relief air. Owners' manuals and maintenance information would be prepared for delivery to the building owner. Finally, record drawing information-including economizer controller set points-must be submitted to the building owner within 90 days of the issuance of a final occupancy permit.

4.11.2.3 Plan Review

Although acceptance testing does not require that the construction team perform any plan review, they should review the construction drawings and specifications to understand the scope of the acceptance tests and raise critical issues that might affect the success of the acceptance tests prior to starting construction. Any construction issues associated with the mechanical system should be forwarded to the design team so that necessary modifications can be made prior to equipment procurement and installation.

4.11.2.4 Testing

The construction inspection is the first step in performing the acceptance tests. In general, this inspection should identify that:

1. Mechanical equipment and devices are properly located, identified, and calibrated.
2. Set points and schedules are established.
3. Documentation is available to identify settings and programs for each device.
4. Select tests to verify acceptable leakage rates for air distribution systems while equipment access is available. Testing is to be performed on the following devices:

- VAV systems
- Constant volume systems
- Package systems
- Air distribution systems
- Economizers
- Demand control ventilation systems
- Variable frequency drive fan systems
- Hydronic control systems
- Hydronic pump isolation controls and devices
- Supply water reset controls
- Water loop heat pump control
- Variable frequency drive pump systems
- System programming
- Time clocks

Chapter 13 contains information on how to complete the acceptance documents. Example test procedures are also available in Chapter 13.

4.11.2.5 Roles and Responsibilities

The installing contractor, engineer of record or owner’s agent shall be responsible for documenting the results of the acceptance test requirement procedures including paper and electronic copies of all measurement and monitoring results. They shall be responsible for performing data analysis, calculation of performance indices and crosschecking results with the requirements of the Energy Standards. They shall be responsible for issuing a Certificate of Acceptance. Enforcement agencies shall not release a final Certificate of Occupancy until a Certificate of Acceptance is submitted that demonstrates that the specified systems and equipment have been shown to be performing in accordance with the Energy Standards. The installing contractor, engineer of record or owner’s agent (upon completion of all required acceptance procedures) shall record their State of California contractor's license number or their State of California professional registration license number on each certificate of acceptance that they issue.

4.11.2.6 Contract Changes

The acceptance testing process may require the design team to be involved in project construction inspection and testing. Although acceptance test procedures do not require that a contractor be involved with a constructability review during design-phase, this task may be included on individual projects at the owner's request. Therefore, design professionals and contractors should review the contract provided by the owner to make sure it covers the scope of the acceptance testing procedures as well as any additional tasks.

This page intentionally left blank.